<u>UNIT I</u> ARTICLES

និយមន័យ: Articles (ការន្ត) គឺជាគ្រឿងសំគាល់សំរាប់ប្រើនៅមុខស័ព្ទជាទូទៅតែងឈរនៅ មុខនៃនាមស័ព្ទ ដែលប្រព្រឹត្តទៅស្ថិតក្នុងលឹង្គទាំងបី Masculine Gender (ប៉ុលិ៍ង្គ) Feminine Gender (ឥត្ថីលឹង្គ) Neuter Gender (នប៉ុសកលឹង្គ) ។

នៅក្នុងភាសាអង់គ្លេសត្រូវបានគេប្រទះឃើញតែ A, An នឹង The តែប៉ុណ្ណោះដែលមាន លក្ខណៈ ស្រដៀងគ្នានិងគុណនាម ពោលគឺការន្តទាំងបីនេះតែងបញ្ចាំង ពន្លឹជះទៅលើនាម ព្រោះហេតុនោះហើយ ពេលខ្លះត្រូវបានគេហៅថា Demonstrative Adjective.

🚄 នៅក្នុងភាសាអង់គ្លេស Articale ត្រូវបានគេចែកជាពីរ ពួកគឺ

- 1 Indefinite Article
- 2 Definite Article

1 Indefinite Article

និយមន័យ: Indefinite គឺជាការន្តដែលមានលក្ខណមិនច្បាស់លាស់មានន័យថាអំបូរនៃ ការន្តនេះ តែងត្រាច់ទៅមិនមានទីបំផុត ពោលគឺពួកវ៉ាតែងបន្សល់ទុកនូវភាពមិនជាក់លាក់ ទៅលើមនុស្ស ឬ វត្ថុដែលគេនិយាយទៅ កាន់។

*ជំរើសរវាង Article An ត្រូវបានគេសំរេចប្រើដោយសំលេង ពោលគឺនៅពីមុខពាក្យដែល ចាប់ផ្តើមដោយសំលេងស្រះត្រូវប្រើ An

EX:

I like to eat an apple.

She has got an uncle / an umbrella / an orange.

We wait for you for an hour.

🖎 នៅពីមុខពាក្យដែលចាប់ផ្តើមដោយសំលេងព្យញ្ជនៈគឺត្រូវប្រើ A

EX:

There is a police coming here.

I have a son in my life.

He likes a baby so much.

ការប្រើប្រាស់ A and An

😇 1 នៅពីមុខពាក្យដែលផ្ដើមដោយព្យញ្ជនៈ

A boy. A reindeer. A man. A yard. A horse, A hotel; A book

ទី 2 នៅពីមុខពាក្យដែលផ្ដើមដោយស្រះ តែបញ្ចេញសំលេងជាព្យញ្ជន: "YU" រឺ "W"ដូចជា

EX:

A university; A union; A European; A ewe; A unicorn; A useful book; A useful advice; A one-eyed man. A one-way street; Such a one.

ទី 3 ប្រើរួមជាមួយនិង អាជីពណាមួយ

EX:

He is an actor.

I'm a professor of English.

She is a dancer forever.

He is a doctor.

😈 4 ប្រីជាមួយនិង វោហាស័ព្ទនៃបរិមាណ

EX:

I need to stay for a couple days.

You have a lot of cars.

He buys a great many books.

There are a great deal of people in Siem Reap.

He pays me back a dozen of pens

<u>**ចំណាំ**</u>ពាក្យ A dozen អាចប្រើ One dozen ជំនួសបាន។

ទី 5 ប្រើដាក់ពីមុខពាក្យ Mr/ Mrss/ Miss + Name

EX:

I don't know a Mr Smith/ a Mrs Preistley/ a Miss Luccile.

ចំណាំ ពាក្យថា A Mr Smith

A Mrs preistley
A Miss Luccile

លុប "A"ចេញមានន័យថាមនុស្សទាំងនេះគឺគេស្គាល់ច្បាស់លាស់ ។

ទី 6 ប្រើជាមួយឃ្លាភ្ជាក់ផ្ញើល ដាក់ពីមុខ នាមរាប់បានឯកវិចនៈ

EX:

What an ugly boy!

What a beautiful girl!

What a white person!

What a tall man!

🤨 7 ប្រើសំរាប់បញ្ជាក់ពីតំលៃ និង ល្បឿន

How much is that?

5 dollars a kilo or

10 pounds a dozen.

He drives in sixty kilometer an hour.

The big boy eats five time a day.

🖁 8 ប្រើសំរាប់ចំនួនពិតប្រាកដ

EX:

He has a hundred cows.

She killed a thousand men in her young day.

I need a million girls for my life.

🖁 9 ច្រើដាក់ពីមុខពាក្យ "Half"

EX:

What do you do for a half-holiday?

Give him a a Mhalf-portion.

We have a half-share for those food.

I need one and a half kilos or I need one kilo and a half.

<u>ចំណាំ</u> ពាក្យកន្លះគីឡូ ¹/₂kg មិនអាចនិយាយយាថា A half killo បានទេ គួរនិយាយថា Half a kilo. តែនិយាយយ៉ាងនេះបាន A half-holiday. A half portion....etc

(មើលឧទាហរណ៍ខាងលើ)

9 10 A and An ត្រូវគេលុបចោលពេលស្ថិតនៅមុខនាមពហុវិចនះដោយពួកវ៉ាមិនមានទំរង់ ពហុវិចនះ ដូច្នេះទំរង់ពហុវិចនះរវ៉ាងពាក្យទាំងនេះគឺ

A dog => Some dogs.

A book => Two books.

A teacher => Three teachers.

A person => People.

A man \Rightarrow Men.

A child => Children.

A woman => Women.

ទី 11 A and An ត្រូវលុបចោលដែលប្រើនៅមុខឈោ្មះអាហារ

I need to have breakfast at 7: 00AM.

She wants to have lunch at the town.

ប៉ុន្តែប្រើបានប្រសិនបើមានគុណនាមអមពីមុខ ដូចជា

I can't have a bad breakfast.

He needs a good dinner every day.

ម្យ៉ាងវិញទៀតបើប្រើ A / An នៅពីមុខឈោ្មះអាហារមានន័យ អាហារនោះត្រូវបានគេរៀប ចំក្នុងវិធីអ្វីមួយដែលល្អបំផុតក្នុងលក្ខណៈនៃកិត្តិយសដ៏ឧត្តម ដែលមាន តំណែងណាមួយ ទើប ឡើងថ្មីៗ

EX:

We are invited to dinner.
} ក្នុងលក្ខណៈសាមញ
He was invited to dinner.

We are in invited to a dinner.

> មិនធម្មតាទេ

He was invited to a dinner.

ចំណាំ ចំពោះពាក្យ Hotel / Historical novel យើងអាចប្រើ An បានបើសិនព្យាង្គ ទីមួយ មិនត្រូវបានគេអានសង្កត់ ដូចជា

They need to build an hotel.

My teacher knows about an historical novel well.

តែទោះជាយ៉ាងណា A hotel / A historical novel គេប្រទះឃើញច្រើនជាង ឬទូទៅជាង។

2 Definite Article

និយមន័យ: វាគឺជាអំបូរនៃការន្តដែលប្រព្រឹត្តិទៅមានលក្ខណៈជាក់លាក់ពោលគឺតែងចង្អល់ ប្រាប់ច្បាស់លាស់ទៅលើមនុស្ស សត្វ ទីកន្លែង ដែលគេនិយាយទៅរក។

🗱 ការប្រើប្រាស់ Definite Article (The)

ករណីទី ១ ប្រើដាក់ពីមុខ (ចំពោះ) មនុស្ស សត្វ វត្ថុ ដេលត្រូវបានគេនិយាយទៅកាន់រូចហើយ EX:

The book is on the table.

I have seen the man many a time.

She likes to talk about the film star.

He learned to sing the song very often.

ករណីទី ២ ប្រើចំពោះនាមឯកវិចនៈដែលត្រូវបានគេនិយាយទៅកាន់ដោយតំណាងឱ្យក្រុម ទាំងមូល

EX:

The cat loves comfort.

The horse is a noble animal.

I dislike the kind of motor bike.

ចំណាំ Cat; Horse ទីនេះគឺសំដៅដល់ឆ្កា សេះ ទាំងអស់។

ករណីទី ៣ ច្រើដាក់មុខឈ្មោះអសាធារណៈដូចជាឈ្មោះសមុទ្រ, ទន្លេ ,ក្រុមកោះ, រួងភ្នំ ឈ្មោះប្រទេសពហុវិចនៈ, កន្តារៈ, វ៉ាលខ្សាច់ ឬសមុទ្រខ្សាច់ ដែលឆ្ងាយដាច់សង្វែង។ EX:

Where is the Atlantic?/ the pacific?/ the black sea?

My brother lives in the Steng Sen / the Nile.

Which way leads us to the inside?

If I were you I would live in the Himalayas or the Alps.

How far is it from here to the Suez Canal?

The Newtherlands are full of bread.

I have never gone to the Sahara.

ខំណាំះ ឈ្មោះប្រទេសខ្លះទៀតមានពាក្យ Republic or Kindom (The) ត្រុវិបានគេប្រើដូចជា The irish Republic; The united Kingdom....etc

ករណីទ៤ ប្រើនៅមុខឈោ្មះស្បេវភៅដែលមានឈ្មោះល្បី

EX:

My girlfriend likes to read the Vendas.

I have got the Ramayana in my study.

He thinks the Puranas is a useful book for her.

ករណីទី ៥ ប្រើចំពោះវត្ថុដែលមានតែមួយគត់ក្នុងលោក

Every one needs the sun.

We can see the moon in the night time.

She wants to live in the sky.

I think the Buddha is my father.

Where is the west/ the eat / the north/the south?

ករណីទ ៦ ប្រើដាក់ពីមុខនាមអសាធារណៈ កាលដែលនាមនោះៗត្រូវបញ្ជាក់ន័យដោយ

គុណនាមឬអមដោយ គុណនាម

EX:

The great Koe Sarath died in U.S.A.

The immortal Sin Sinsamuth died in Pol Pot's time.

Many people come and see the famous Angkor Wat.

ការណីទី ៧ ប្រើជាមួយអតិវិសេសគុណនាម (Superlative).

EX:

This is the best book of elementary chemistry.

She is the happiest girl alive, I think.

He is the richest man in the city.

I lived in the darkest time for a long time.

ករណីទី ៨ ប្រើដាក់ពីមុខឧបករណ៍ភ្លេង

EX:

My friend is good at playing the guitar.

He can't play the flute.

Mrs. Priestley can play the piano well.

ការណីទី ៩ ប្រើជាគុណកិរិយា (Adverb)ជាមួយវិសេសគុណនាម(Comparative)

EX:

The more they get, the more they want.

The less they get, the more they care.

ករណីទី 90 ប្រើដាក់មុខ ordinal number

EX:

I want to marry the first daughter.

He is the first man whom I meet.

She is the seventh daughter.

He is the third son in the family.

ករណីទី ១១ ប្រើជាមួយគុណនាមតំណាងឱ្យលំដាប់ថ្នាក់ទូទៅ

EX:

The poor lead their lives difficultly.

He always supports the rich.

She likes to talk with the happy.

We must not look down the foolish.

ករណីទី ១២ ច្រើជាមួយនាមដែលមានឃ្លាបន្ថែមជាមួយ ។

EX:

I love the girl in red.

The man in blue in my father.

He wants to go to the place where she lives.

ករណីទី ១៣ ច្រើដាក់ពីមុខនាមដែលមានហេតុផល ប្រព្រឹត្តិទៅអាចតំណាងឱ្យតែវត្ថុជាក់លាក់ ។

EX:

He walks around the garden (មានន័យថាសូនច្បារក្នុងផ្ទះ)

Please pass me the wine (មានន័យថាស្រាដែលដឹងថាជារបស់យើងហើយ)

The car is dirty now (មានន័យថាឡានជាកម្មសិទ្ឋិរបស់យើង (ជាក់លាក់))

The news paper is so good (មានន័យថា កាសែតដែលយើងបានអាន)

ការណីទី ១៤ ប្រើនៅមុខឈោ្វះទាំងឡាយណាដែលមាន N + of + N.

EX:

I don't want to live in the united states of America.

We will fly over the Bay of Biscay.

Where is the cape of good hope.

The Gult of Mexico is great.

ករណីទី១៥ ប្រើដាក់ពីមុខឈោ្មះកាសែត ឬ ឈោ្មះកប៉ាល់

EX:

The Times has got good news every day.

We study the Phnom Penh Post on Saturday.

He needs to read the New York Time now.

You can go to P.P by the Rasmey Bopha (ឈ្មោះកម្ពាល់)

I have never seen the Great Britain (ឈោះកម្ពាល់)

He thinks that the Yey Mouse Mean Reth wines the race.

ការណីទី ១៦ ប្រើដាក់ពីមុខពាក្យ West/ East/ North/ South.

EX:

Nobody lives in the North Pole/ The South Pole.

You can't go into the east gate.

Which way lead me to the East Indies/West Idies.

ចំណាំ គេមិនប្រើ the ចំពោះពាក្យទាំងនេះទេ South Africa; North America. West

Germany...etc.

EX:

Before she worked in West Germany.

He went to South Africa twice.

North America is good for me.

ប៉ុន្តែយើងអាចប្រើពាក្យ the ដាក់មុខ East/West/ South/ North បានពេលពួកវាដើរតួជានាម EX:

My uncle lives in the North of Spain.

Where is the middle east?

ករណីទី ១៧ ប្រើដាក់ពីមុខឈោ្មះក្រុមអ្នកចំរៀង ឬវង់ភ្លេង ឈោ្មះអកកេះ ឈោ្មះក្រុម Pop

EX:

We will go and see the Bach Choir to night.

The Philadelphia Orchestra can play very well.

The old dislikes the Beaths.

ការណីទី ១៨ ច្រើដាក់ពីមុខឈោ្មះមនុស្សភ្ជាប់ដោយ (S) តំណាងឱ្យគ្រូសារទាំងមូលប្ញសាច់ញាតិ

EX:

The smiths like to work for the hotel.

I like the Priestleys so much.

He is talking about the Hops.

My family loves the Owngas.

<u>**ចំណាំ**</u> The smiths ក្នុងនោះមានលោក Smith ប្រព័ន្ឋ, កូនរបស់គាត់ផងដែរ ។

The Priestleys ក្នុងនោះមានលោក Priestley ប្រពន្ឋ, កូនរបស់គាត់ផងដែរ ។

the Owngas ក្នុងនោះមានលោក Ownga ប្រពន្ន, កូនរបស់គាត់ផងដែរ ។

ករណីទី ១៩ The មិនត្រូវប្រើនៅមុខឈោ្លះល្បែងទាំងឡាយ

EX:

John goes and plays golf.

We must not play dice.

Who likes to see boxing?

ករណីទ ២០ The មិនត្រូវប្រើនៅមុខឈោ្មះអាហារ

EX:

I always have breakfast at 7: 30 AM.

He can't have lunch at home today.

ប៉ុន្តែបើមានគុណនាមនៅអមអាចប្រើបាន

EX:

The wedding breakfast was held in my home.

ការណីទី ២១ មិនប្រើ The ពីមុខពាក្យញាតិផៅសន្តាន ដូចជា Father, Mother, Aunt, Uncle,

និងពាក្យ Cook. Nurse ដែលមានន័យថា My cook. My nurse.

EX:

Father is the special leader for the family.

I love mother.

Aunt wants you to see her and uncle.

Mother has returned back soon.

Cook is lazy today.

ករណីទី ២២ The មិនត្រូវច្រើពីមុខឈោ្លះវត្ថុរាវ និងនាមអរូបី ពោលគឺនាមរាប់មិនបាន ដែលត្រូវបានគេប្រើក្នុងគំនិតទូទៅ

EX:

Sugar is bad for your teeth.

Gold is a precious metal.

Wisdom is the gift of heaven.

Honesty is the best policy.

Virtue is its own reward.

ប៉ុន្តែ យើងប្រើ The នៅពីមុខនាមទាំងនេះបានដរាបណានាមនោះៗ ត្រូវបានគេដឹងហើយ ប្ញហៅថានាមជាក់លាក់ ហើយពិសេសនោះពេលដែលមានគុណនាម ឬឃ្លាគុណនាមបញ្ជាក់ EX:

Will you pass me the salt?

The wisdom of Solomon is great.

I can't forget the kindness which you treated me.

ករណីទី ២៣ មិនប្រើ The នៅពីមុខនាមរាប់បានពហុវចនដែលសំដៅដល់គំនិតទូទៅ EX:

Children like chocolates.

Computers are used in many offices.

តែយើងអាចប្រើបានបើសិននាមនោះមានលក្ខណជាក់លាក់ដូចជា

Where are the children? មានន័យថាកូនៗជារបស់យើង

My son can type the computer មានន័យថាកំព្យូទ័រជាកម្មសិទ្ឋិរបស់យើង

ករណីទី ២៤ មិនប្រើ The នៅមុខឈ្មោះភាសាដូចជា

We are studying English.

They speak Spanish for the meeting.

ករណីទី ២៥ មិនប្រើ The នៅមុខពាក្យ Home, School, College, Church, Bed, Table,

Hospital, Market, Prison, Work, Sea, Town, Office, Court, University,

EX:

He is at home.

I will go home tomorrow.

ប៉ុន្តែយើងច្រើ The នៅមុខ Home បានពេលដែលមានឃ្លា វឺពាក្យពណ៌នាដូចជា

We arrived at the bride's home.

Before this was the home of the queen.

A mud hut was the only home he had ever known.

້ຳເກາະຕັງ School, College, Church, Bed, Table, Hospital, Market, Exchange,

Society, Nature, Man, Woman, Prison, Court, University, ការន្ត The

ត្រូវបានប្រើដាក់ពីមុខបើសិនទឹកន្លែងទាំងនេះជាក់លាក់ ឬ ទឹកន្លែងទាំងនោះគេទៅតែម្តង

ម្ភាលប៉ុណ្ណោះ

EX:

I go to the school on Sunday of my own.

The school is near my home.

I met him at the church.

The bed is broken.

He went to the hospital to see his girlfriend.

🖎 យើងអាចនិយាយបានទាំងពីរផ្លូវក្នុងទំរង់បែបនេះ

EX:

The first and the second chapter. or The first and second Chapter.

The End of Articles

Unit II NOUNS

និមយន័យ: អ៊ីទាំងពួងដែលមានឈ្មោះហៅបានឫសភាវៈទាំងឡាយណាអាចមើលឃើញ ប៉ះបាន

ឬកំនត់ជារូបរាងពិតប្រាកដ់ ដូចពាក្យថា: Book, pen, pencil, table, person,

Phnom Penh, Paris, Bangkok, London, wind, fire, earth, water, etc.

Nouns are divided into many kinds:

- 1- Proper Noun
- 2- Common Noun
- **3- Collective Noun**
- **4- Compound Noun**
- 5- Abstractive Noun
- 6- Uncountable Noun
- 7- Countable Noun
- 8- Gender of Noun
- 9- Equivalent Noun
- 10 Agent Noun

1/ Proper Noun: (អសាធារណ:នាម)

និយមន័យ: Proper Noun គឺជាពពួកនាមដែលមានត្រឹមតែឈោ្មះប៉ុណ្ណោះសំដៅដល់ឈ្មោះ របស់មនុស្ស សត្វ វត្ថុ ទីកន្លែង ជាដើម ។ ចូរចំណាំថា Proper noun គឺតែងតែស រសេរផ្ដើម ឡើងដោយអក្សរធំ ជានិច្ច ទោះនៅកណ្ដាល ចុង ដើមប្រយោគក៏ដោយ។

EX:

- Paris is the modern capital of Franch.
- Phnom Penh is the heart of Cambodia.
- Mr Priestley is a good teacher.
- Mrs Priestley is a professional midwife.
- Tom is a good English teacher.
- Mr Sek is a teacher of English



- Sally is an obedient cat
- I like London so much

2/ Common Noun (សាធារណនាម)

និយមន័យ: Common Noun គឺជាពពួកនាមត្រូវបានគេប្រើ នៅក្នុងលក្ខណៈ ទូទៅសំដៅដល់ មនុស្ស-សត្វ-វត្ថុ-ទីកន្លែង-។ Common Noun គឺមិន មែនជាឈ្មោះ តែពួកវា ជាសភាវៈដែលអាចកំនត់រូបរាងជាក់លាក់ មានដូចជាពាក្យថា: Man, Bull, cow, Town, Province, car, boy, girl, Book, pen, road, TV, etc.

EX:

- He is a dangerous man in the village.
- She has got a good bull.
- Do you like your old cow?
- We want to live in town.
- my province is full of fish
- the charming girl is driving her car.
- He is a noisy boy in the <u>family</u>.

3./ Collective Noun : (សមូហនាម)

និយន័យ: Collective Noun គឺជាអំបូរនាមមួយប្រភេទ ជានិច្ចជាកាលតែងរួមផ្សំគ្នាជាក្រុម

ហើយត្រូវបានគេហៅតែមួយមាត់ ដូចពាក្យថា: Mob, Group, party, team, dozen, crowd, bevy, herd, government, nation, company, association, troop, court, fleet, twine, committee, cluster, etc.

EX:

- during the traffic accident, the mob created a lot of difficulties for rescue the Victims.
- She dislikes my group at all.
- The party is so good.
- Mr Smith is leading a team of football.
- She gives him a dozen of eggs.

🖎 ចំណាំ: ម្យ៉ាងទៀត Collective Noun ត្រូវបានគេផ្សំតាមរូបមន្ត ដូចខាងក្រោម :

Form: [Collective Noun + Of + Common Noun]

EX:

- A group of students.
- A bunch of flowers.
- A gang of thieves.
- A crowd of people.
- A flock of sheep.
- A dozen of eggs.
- An army of ants.

4./ Compound Noun (សមាសនាម)

និយមន័យ: Compound Noun គឺជាពពួកនាមដែលកើតឡើងដោយការផ្សំធាតុគ្ន រវាងពាក្យមួយ និងពាក្យ មួយផ្សេងទៀត ហើយបង្កើតអត្ថន័យរួមគ្នាតែមួយ។

```
Compound Noun ភាគច្រើនត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតដោយ :
```

- 1, Noun + Noun
- 2, Adjective + Noun
- 3, Gerund + Noun
- 4, Noun + Gerund
- 5, Noun + Preposition + Noun
- 6, Verb + Noun
- 7, Preposition + Verb
- 8, Verb + Preposition + Adverb
- 9, Preposition + Noun
- 10.To infinitive + Noun / Pronoun

4.1 Compound Noun ត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតដោយ

```
Form: [ Noun + Noun ]
```

<u>**ចំណាំះ**</u> បើមិនប្រើសញ្ញា Hyphen(-) ទេត្រូវសរសេរពាក្យនោះឱ្យជាប់គ្នា គឺមិនត្រូវដកឃ្លាឡើយ ដូចជា

```
Chess + board
                 => chess-board or chessboard.
Sun + glasses
                 => sun-glasses or sunglasses.
                 => cow-boy or cowboy.
Cow + boy
Girl + friend
                 => girl-friend or girlfriend.
Boy + friend
                 => boy-friend or boyfriend.
                 => hand-organ or handorgan.
Hand + organ
Pipe + organ
                 => pipe-organ or pipeorgan.
Head + set
                 => head-set or headset.
Hand + phone
                 => hand-phone or handphone.
```

Shoe + lace => shoe-lace or shoelace.
Neck + lace => Neck-lace or Necklace.

4.2 Compound Noun ត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតឡើងដោយ

```
Form: [ Adjective + Noun ]
```

Black + Board => Black-board or blackboard. Sweat + Heart => Sweat-heart or sweetheart. Strong + Hold=> Strong hold or strong-hold

4.3 Compound Noun ត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតឡើងដោយ

```
Form:[ Gerund + Noun ]
```

EX:

Walking + Stick => Walking-stick or alkingstick.
Writing + Desk => Writing-desk or writingdesk.
Smoking + pipe => smoking-pipe or smokingpipe
Learning + English => learning-English or learningEnglish.
Teaching + Grammar => teaching-grammar or teachinggrammar.
Developing + country => developing-country or developingcountry.

Waiting + list => waiting-list or waitinglist.

Dinning + room => dinning-room or dinningroom.

Swimming + pool =>swimming-pool Driving + license => driving- license.

4.4 Compound Noun ត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតដោយ

Form: [Noun + Gerund]

```
EX:
     -Fruit + picking
                              => fruitpicking or fruitpicking
     -Car + driving
                              => car-driving or cardriving.
     -Television + watching
                              =>television-watching or televisionwatching.
                              => book-reading or bookreading.
     -Book + reading
     -Weight + lifting
                              => weight-lifting or weightlighting.
4.5 Compound Noun ត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតឡើងដោយ
Form: [ Noun + preposition + Noun ]
EX:
     -Father + In + Law
                              => father-in-law.
     -Mother + In + Law
                              => mother-in-law.
     -Son + In + Law
                              => son-in-law.
     -Daughter + In +Law
                              =>daughter-in-law.
     -Commander +In +Chief => commander - -in-chief.
4.6 Compound Noun ត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតឡើតដោយ
Form: [ Verb + Noun ]
EX:
     -Hang+ Man => hang-man.
     -Pick+ Pocket =>pick-pocket.
4.7 Compound Noun ត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតឡើយដោយ
Form: [ Preposition + Verb ]
EX:
     - In + Come => in-come.
     - Out + look => out-look.
4.8 Compound Noun ត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតឡើយដោយ
Form: [Verb + Preposition / Adverb]
EX:
     - Build + Up
                      => build-up.
     - Break + Down => break-down.
     - Smash + Down => smash-down.
4.9 Compound Noun ត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតឡើងដោយ
Form: [ Preposition + Noun ]
EX:
      - Over + Coat => over-coat.
     - Up + Land => up-land.
4.10 Compound Noun ត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតឡើងដោយ
Form: [ To infinitive + Noun / Pronoun ]
     - To go to school
     - To see the doctor.
     - To visit the temple.
     - To study English.
     - To see me.
```

To love her.To save them.

EX:

- To go to school is so good for a kid.
- I want to see the doctor every three months.
- *To visit the temple* makes you happy.
- *To study English* is not easy.
- To see me is difficult now.
- To save them is the work of the king.

5. Abstractive Noun (នាមអរុមប៊ិយ)

និយមន័យ: Abstractive Noun គឺជាពពួកនាមដែលមិនមានលក្ខណពិតប្រាកដ បង្ហាញឱ្យឃើញ ទ្រង់ទ្រាយពិតប្រាកដ ដូចនាមផ្សេងទៀតឡើយ ពោលគឺពួកនាមទាំងនោះ គឺស្រេចតែសន្មត់ រឹ

ឱ្យតម្លៃថាជានាមតែប៉ុណ្ណោះ ដូចពាក្យថា: Happiness, Largeness, Bigness, Whiteness, Braveness, Childhood, Monkhood, Leader, Ship, Obedience, Gaiety, Championship, etc.

- ☀ Abstractive Noun / Abstract Noun ត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតតាមរូបមន្តដូចខាងក្រោម
 - 1- Adjective + Ness
 - 2- Common Noun + Hood
 - 3- Common Noun + Ship
 - 4- Adjective / Noun + Ism
 - 5- Verb + Tion
 - 6- Verb + Ment
 - 7- Verb + Ing
 - ៨- Th នៅខាងចុង
 - 9- Adjective/ Noun + Dom
 - 10- Adjective + Lity
 - 11- Verb + Iance
 - 12- Verb + Ience
 - 13- Verb + Sion

5.1 Abstract Noun ត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតឡើយដោយ

- [Abstractive + Ness]
- Good + Ness => Goodness.
- Happy + Ness => Happiness.
- Sad + Ness => Sadness.
- Small+ Ness => Smallness.
- Short + Ness => Shortness.
- Tall + Ness => Tallness.
- Dark + Ness => Darkness.
- Lazy + Ness => Laziness.

5.2 Abstractive Noun ត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតឡើងដោយ

Form: [Compound Noun + hood]

- EX: -Monk + Hood => monkhood.
 - Child + Hood => childhood.
 - Mother + Hood => motherhood.
 - Father + Hood => fatherhood.
 - Knight + Hood => knighthood.
 - Neighbor + Hood => neighborhood.

5.3 Abstractive Noun ត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតឡើងដោយ

```
Form: [Compound noun + ship]
```

EX: - leader + ship => leadership.

- Champion + ship => championship.
- member + ship => membership.
- friend + ship => friendship.

5.4 Abstractive Noun ត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតឡើងដោយ

```
Form: [Adjective / noun + ism]
```

- Tour + Ism => tourism.
- Hero + Ism => heroism.
- Material + Ism => materialism.
- Hindu + Ism => Hinduism.
- Social + Ism => socialism.

5.5 Abstract Noun ត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតដោយ មាន Tion នៅខាងចុងកិតវិយាស័ព្ទ

EX:

- Conviction.
- Conversation.
- Adaptation.
- Invitation.
- Resignation.

5.6 Abstractive Noun ត្រូវបានគេបេង្គីតឡើងដោយ

```
Form: [Verb + Ment]
```

- Argue + Ment => argument.
- Move + Ment => movement.
- Develop + Ment => development.
- Entertain + Ment => entertainment.

5.7 Abstractive Noun ត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតឡើងដោយ

Form: [verb + ing]

EX:

- smoke + Ing => smoking.
- Lack + ing => lacking.
- Live + Ing => living.
- Eat + Ing =>eating.
- Drink + Ing => drinking.
- Learn + Ing => learning.
- Play +Iing => playing.

5.8 Abstractive Noun ត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតឡើងដោយ

- -Length
- Depth.
- Youth.

5.9 Abstractive Noun ត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតឡើងដោយ

- Form: [Adjective + Noun / Dom]
 - Free + Dom => freedom.
 - Wise + Dom => wisedom.
 - King + Dom => kingdom.

```
5.10 Abstract Noun ត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតឡើងដោយ lity ដាក់ខាងចុង adjective.
```

EX:

- Possible + Lity => possibility.
- Responsible + Lity => responsibility.
- Visible + Lity => visibility.

5.11 Abstractive Noun ត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតឡើងដោយ

Form: [Verb + Iance]

EX: - Rely + Iance => Reliance.

5.12 Abstract Noun ត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតឡើងដោយ Ience ដាក់ខាងចុងស័ព្ទ

EX:

- Obedience.
- Disobedience.
- Patience.

5.13 Abstract Noun ត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតឡើងដោយមាន Sion នៅខាងចុង

EX:

- Vision.
- Mission.
- Provision.

6- Uncountable Noun / Mass Noun / Material Noun. (នាមរាប់មិនបាន)

និយមន័យ: Uncountable Noun គឺជាពពួកនាមមួយប្រភេទដែលមានលក្ខណល្បាយ

គឺថាមិនអាច ត្រូវបានបំបែក រឺ ញែកឱ្យដាច់ពីគ្នាដោយឯកតាទីទៃបានឡើយ

<u>ប៉ំហ៊េន</u> Uncountable Noun តែងតែបដិសេធចំនួនគត់ជាក់លាក់នៅខាងចុង ចំនួនគត់មានដូចជា one, two, three, four. Five, etc.

🖎 Uncountable noun ชารผู้ชนา Money, Water, Sand, Soup, Soap, Beer, Wine,

Powder, Sugar, Butter, Meat, Rice, Salt, Silk, Copper, Brass, Ice, Ice-cream, Stone, Soil, Fire, Oxygen, Petrol, Paper, Medicine,etc.

EX:

Jhon drinks much water every day.

Margarette is playing on the sand.

I throw a piece of stone at the wall.

He needs some salt for his soup.

They like to drink to much beer.

눌 ចំណាំ: ចំនួនដែលប្រើពីមុខវាបានមានត្រឹមតែ Some, Enough, A little, Plenty of តែប៉ុណ្ណេះ

ម្យ៉ាងទៀត Uncountable Noun ត្រុវបានគេបង្កើតតាមរូបមន្តដូចនេះគឺ :

Form: [Numberal Adj + Common noun + Of + Uncountable noun]

EX:

A glass of milk.

Two glasses of milk.

Five pieces of chalk.

A cup of tea.

One kilogram of sugar.

A loaf of brad.

A bottle of ink.

Three pieces of stone.

7- Countable noun (នាមរាប់បាន)

និយមន័យ: Countable Noun គឺជាពពូកនាមទាំឡាយណាដែលមានឯកតាទីទៃ ដាច់ដោយឡែកពីគ្នា ហើយជាទូទៅយើងតែងអាចគណនាដោយប្រើចំនួនជាក់លាក់នៅខាងមុខបានដើម្បីកំនត់ចំនួនពិតប្រាកដ

Countable Noun មានដូចជា Bottle, Pen, Teacher, Book, Picture, Dog, Cat, Horse,

Ship, People, Umbrella

EX:

He has two bottles.

The boy needs their pens.

I have lost five books.

They plant many trees.

She bought one picture.

8- Gender of Noun (ភេទរបស់នាម រឺ លិង្ខរបស់នាម)

និយមន័យ: Gender of Noun គឺជាពាក្យដែលសំដៅទៅរកភេទនៃាមនៅក្នុងភាសា
អង់គ្លេស ។ នៅក្នុងអក្សរសាស្ត្រភាសាអង់គ្លេស ការសិក្សាអំពីលិង្គ រឺ ភេទរបស់នាម
គឺពិតជាមិនមានលក្ខណចាំបាច់ ដូចភាសាដទៃទេ មានភាសាអាឡឺម៉ង់ជាដើម ប៉ុន្តែចាំបាច់ត្រូវ
តែស្វែងឱ្យបានស៊ីជំរៅ នៃពាក្យថាលិង្គ រឺ ភេទនេះ ។

- 🔼 Gender of noun ត្រូវបានគេបែងចែកជា ៤ ចំនែកគឺ :
 - 1 Masculine gender.
 - 2 Feminine gender.
 - 3 Neuter gender.
 - 4 Common gender.
- 8.1 Masculine Gender គឺសំដៅត្រឹមតែភេទប្រុស រឺ ឈ្មោលប៉ុណ្ណោះដូចជាពាក្យ : Father,

King, Boy, Son, Brother, Grand father, Grand son, Nephew, Man, Monk, Waiter, Actor, Horse, Ox, Drone, Dog, etc.

8.2 Feminine Gender គឺសំដៅត្រឹមតែភេទស្រី រឺ ញីប៉ុណ្ណោះ ដូចជាពាក្យថា : Mother, Queen,

Girl, Daughter, Sister, Grand mother, Grand daughter, Niece, Woman, Waitress, Actress, Mare, Cow, Bee, Bitch, etc.

- 8.3 Neuter Gender គឺសំដៅដល់ អភេទ ជួចជា : Table, Gook, Bridge, Computer, etc.
- 8.4 Common Gender គឺសំដៅដល់ភេទទូទៅ គឺប្រុសក៏បាន ស្រីក៏បាន ដូចពាក្យថា : Teacher, Student, People, Child, Engineer, Driver, Worker,
- 9- Equivalent noun

និយមន័យ : Equivalent Noun គឺជាអំបូរនាមមួយប្រភេទដែលមានតួនាទីជានាម ដោយការកំនត់

តាមរូបមន្តដូចតទៅ :

1 To infinitive

2 Gerund

3 the + Adjective

4 the + past participle

5 personal + pronoun

6 Phrase

7 Clause

9.1 To infinitive

EX:

To sleep is very good for Mr.Hob.

To study is very boring for Mr. Hob.

I want to work in Siem Reap.

She needs to buy a new car this year.

9.2 Gerund

EX:

I want learning English and German.

She is good at cooking.

He is strong in making money.

They like playing on the sand.

9.3 [The + Adjective]

EX:

- The food should be admired.
- The bad never help the poor.
- The wise always struggle in the bad situation.

9.4 [the + past participle]

EX:

- The complicated often occur to all people.
- The struggled drive me understand about the life .
- The protected is very important for us.
- The studied make the dull boy smart.

9.5 Personal Pronoun ចែកចេញជាពីរគឺ:

- 1 Subject Pronoun= I, You, We, He, She, It, They.
- 2 Object pronoun = Me, Us, You, Him, Her, It, Them,
- I love her but she doesn't return my love.
- Why can they go into the building?
- Who names you like that?
- They have a big problem with him.

9.6 Phrase

EX:

- Where to go is not known.
- We always know what to learn any more.
- He tells me how to do the home-work.
- Monday is a find day for traveling.
- The lady with long hair is my aunty.
- The man with great knowledge lives in the town.
- The storm blowing so hard yesterday destroyed a lot of public property.

9.7 Clause

EX:

- I don't know why she left me at once.

- No one understands what I must do now.

10- Agent Noun

និយមន័យ: Agent Noun គឺជានាមមួយបែបដែលត្រូវបានគេប្រើដើម្បីបង្ហាញថាអ្នកណាម្នាក់ជា អ្នកធ្វើ នូវអំពើ រឺ សកម្មភាព ភាគច្រើននៃ Agent Noun ត្រូវបានគេសរសេរដោយប ច្ច័យសំរាប់ដាក់ខាងចុង (Suffix) ដូចជា: (Or, Ant, Ist, Ian, Ee, Re,) EX:

```
- Act
       => Actor.
                          - Bag
                                  => Baggor.
- Visit => Visitor.
                         - Sail
                                   => Sailor.
- Serve => Servant.
                         - Attend => Attendant.
- Study => Student.
                         - Piano
                                   => Pianist.
- Music => Musician.
                         - Commit => Committee.
     => Eater.
                         - Drink => Drinker.
                         - Walk
                                   => Walker.
- Learn => Learner.
- Run => Runner.
```

- Run => Runn *** Plural of Noun**

C:---1---

និយមន័យ: Plural of Noun គឺសំដៅទៅរកភេទទ្រង់ទ្រាយនៃពហុវចនរបស់នាមនៅក្នុង ភាសា អង់គ្លេស ពោលគឺចំនួនចាប់ពីពីរឡើងទៅ ។ នៅក្នុងភាសាអង់គ្លេវិធីសាស្ត្រនៃ ការបង្កើតពហុវចន នៃនាម មានច្រើនករណី ដូចជាការបន្ថែម "S," "Es," "Yes," "Ves," នៅខាងចុងពាក្យ នាម ។

ករណីទី ១ ពហុវិចននៃនាមដោយការបន្ថែម "s" នៅខាងចុងនាមទាំងឡាយណាដែលបញ្ចប់ដោយ

តួរអក្សរ រឺ ស្រះដូចជា: A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z រឺ ស្រះផ្សំដូចជា: Ay Ey Oy Uy ត្រូវថែម "S"ខាងចុងពេល ឆ្នៃឱ្យកើតទៅជា Plural ។

D1.....1

Examples

<u>Singular</u>		<u>Plural</u>
One banana		Two banana
crab		crabs
hand		hands
bottle		bottles
bag		bags
duck		ducks
girl		girls
Dam		dams
Can		cans
Map		Maps
car		cars
cat		cats
bow		bows
day	ស្រះផ្សំ	days
key	()	keys
boy	()	boys
guy	()	guys

ករណីទី ២ "Es" នាមជាឯកវិចទាំងឡាយដែលបញ្ជាប់ដោយតូស្រ**ះ** រឺ ព្យញ្ជនៈ ដូចជា "O" "X" "S" Sh" "Ch" "Ss" នៅខាងចុង ពេលពួកវាត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតឱ្យទៅជាទំរង់ ពហុវិច(Plural form) ចាំបាច់ត្រូវតែបន្ថែម "Es" ខាងចុង ។

Examples

Singular	plural
One mango	Two mangoes.
box	boxes.
bus	buses.
fish	fishes.
match	matches.
kiss	kisses

<u>ការណីទី</u> ៣ "Ies" នាមឯកវិចនទាំងឡាយដែលបញ្ចប់ដោយតួរអក្សរ "Y" តែឯងខាងចុងត្រូវលុប

"Y" ចេញសិនទើបបន្ថែម "ies" ពេលបង្កើតទៅជាទំរងពហុវិចន (Plural form)

Examples

Singular	Plural
One lady	Two ladies.
enemy	enemies.
baby	babies.
Candy	candies.

ការណិទី ៤ "ves" នាមឯកវិចន ដែលបញ្ចប់ដោយតួរអក្សរ "F" or "Fe" ខាងចុងត្រូវលុប "F" or "Fe" ចេញហើយទើបបន្ថែម "Ves" នៅពេលដែលបង្កើតឱ្យទៅជាទំរង់ពហុវិចន (Plural

Form).

Examples

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u> .
One wolf	Two wolves.
thief	thieves.
leaf	leaves.
knife	knives.
wife	wives.
life	lives.

ករណីលើកលែងទី ៣ មាននាមនួយចំនួនផ្សេងត្បេត ដែលបញ្ចប់ដោយ " F " ខាងចុងប៉ុន្តែពហុវនៈ

របស់វាមិនលុប "F" ហើយបន្ថែម Ves ទេបែជាថែម s នៅក្នុងទំរង់ពហុវិចន(Plural form)

Examples

Singular	Plural.
One cliff	cliffs
Scarf	scarffs
Proof	proofs
Roof	roofs
Chief	chiefs
Chaf	chafe

<u>ករណីលើកលែងទី</u> ៤ មាននាមមួយប្រភេទទៀត ដែលទំនងជាមិនមានទំរង់ឯកវិចនៈ ព្រោះថា

នាមទាំងនោះតែង បញ្ចប់ដោយ "S" ជាដរាបនៅខាងចុង ។

Singular	Plural
News	News
Trousers	Trousers
Scissors	Scissors

Functions of Nouns

នៅក្នុងភាសាអង់គ្លេស Noun អាចមានតួនាទី រឺ មុខងារច្រើនករណីដូចជា :

- 1- Noun is used as the Subject of Verb
- 2- Noun is used as the Object of Verb
- 3- Noun is used as the Subject complement
- 4- Noun is used as the Object Complement
- 5- Noun is used as the Opposition
- 6- Noun is used as Object of Preposition

1. Noun is used as the Subject of Verb

EX

The people always work at day time.

The tiger eats meat.

ករណី ៥ ពហុវិចនៈ នៃនាមមិនឡើងទាត់ (Plurals of Irregular Nouns)

មាននាមមួយចំនួនតូចដែលមានទំរង់ពហុវចនៈ មិនដូចគេពោលគឺទំរង់ពហុវចនៈរបស់វា

តែងប្រែប្រួលជាដរាប មានដូចនាមខាងក្រោមនេះ

EXAMPLE

Singular	Plural
One man	Two men
woman	women
child	children
louse	lice
mouse	mice
tooth	teeth
foot	feet

ករណីលើកលែងទី ១ មាននាមមួយចំនួនទ្យេតទំរង់ពហុវិចន: មិនបន្ថែម "s" "es" "ies"

ទេពេលប្តូរទំរង់វា ពោលគឺនាមទំាងនេះ តែងមានទំរង់ឯកវិចនៈ និងទំរងពហុវិចនៈ ដូចគ្នា ដូចជា

EXAMPLE

Singular	Plural
One people	Two people
sheep	sheep
salmon	salmon
deer	deer

ករណីលើកលែងទី ២ មាននាមមួយចំនួនតូចផ្សេងទៀតដែលបញ្ចប់ដោយស្រះ "O"ខាងចុងប៉ុន្តែពហុវិចនៈ

របស់វាមិនបន្ថែម "Es" ទេពោលគឺបន្ថែមត្រឹម "S" ប៉ុណ្ណោះ នៅក្នុងទំរង់ពហុវចនៈ(Plural form)

EXAMPLE

Singular	Plural
One zoo	Two zoo

----radio -----dynamo -----dynamo
----solo -----photo -----photo
-----memo -----video -----video

The deer live in the forest.

A radio can help to inform quickly.

The sitting-room is a quite big room.

The poor lead a terrible life.

The studies help him to emerge out of poverty.

2. Noun is used as the Object of Verb.

EX:

I dislike sweetness at all for I am an alcoholic.

They can see the boy but can not touch his happiness.

He speaks English well in the hotel.

We love our parents very day.

Why do you hate the stupid man?

I can't drive the herd alone.

3. Noun is used as the Subject Complement.

EX:

He is a chief monk in this pagoda.

She is a professional midwife.

Mr.long Vuthy es a skillful teacher in Cambodia.

He want to be a powerful police in the future.

We are people who believe Buddha.

4. Noun is used as Object Complement.

EX:

I selected her a god mother.

He considers me a slave in the family.

She always admires his wife a goddess.

5. Noun is used as the Apposition ប្រើនៅខាងក្រោយសញ្ញា (,) ប្រាប់ន័យថា ដែលជា

EX:

He is Mr. smith, the doctor.

This is the work, difficulty.

That is Mr. long Vuthy, the teacher.

6. Noun is used as the Object of Preposition.

EX:

We are talking about the program.

I'm not sure of the problemme.

They want to go to the countryside.

We must listen to his advice.

They had just emerged out of polluted at morphere.

All the students will go into the garden soon.

ចំនុចសំខាន់របស់នាម វិ នាមទាំង ១០ នោះ ត្រូវបានលោកអ្នកប្រាជ្ញផ្នែកអក្សរសាស្ត្រភាសាអង់គ្លេសត្រូបាន

បែងចែក ជាពីរគី Proper Noun and Common Noun.Proper Noun គឺជាអំបូរនាមមួយប្រភេទ ដែលមានត្រឹមតែឈ្មោះប៉ុណ្ណោះរួចហើយក៏អោយ តំលៃថាជានាមក្នុងលក្ខណពិសេស Proper Noun

ស្លឹកឈើ

គឺស្ថិតនៅតែឯង មានន័យថាឥតមាននាមដទៃចូលរួមទេ ។

🖎 Common Noun គឺជាអំបូរនាមមួយ ប្រភេទដែលមានលក្ខណទូទៅ នៅក្នុងលក្ខណ សេសនេះ

Common Noun មាននាមច្រើនសង្គ្រោះចូល ដោយសេចក្តីថាស្ទើតែនាមទាំងអស់ គឺជាត់ចេញតែ

Proper Noun ប៉ុណ្ណេះ ។

The End of nouns

Unit III

VERBS

និយមន័យ: Verb គឺជាពាក្យដែលត្រូវបានគេប្រើដើម្បីបញ្ជាក់នូវសកម្មភាពឬសភាវៈគតិដែលសំដែងចេញ នូវចលនា ឬទង្វើ ។ ក៏រិយាស័ព្ទមានចូជា: Speak, Go, Come, Eat, Drink, Listen, Think, Sit, Stand ...,etc. ក៏រិយាស័ព្ទនៅភាសាអង់គ្លេស ចែកចេញជាច្រើនប្រភេទ ដូចតទៅ:

- 1- Finite Verb.
- 2- Non finite Verb.
- 3- Transitive Verb.
- 4- Intransitive Verb.
- 5- Linking Verb.
- 6- Special Verb.
- 7- Auxiliary Verb.
- 8- Infinitive Verb.
- 9- Regular Verb.
- 10-Conjugation of Verb with third person singular.
- 11-Irregular Verb.

1 Finite Verb

និយមន័យ Finite Verb គឺជាប្រភេទនៃកិរិយាស័ព្ទដែលតែងតែប្រែប្រួលតាមបទប្រធាន Finite verb អាចជាកិរិយាស័ព្ទខ្ទង់ទី១ រឺ ខ្ទង់ទី២ តែប៉ុណ្ណោះ មិនអាចមានខ្ទង់ទី៣ទេ ។

EX:

He is a good guy as a mechanic.

She was my sister-in-law in 2003.

It always sleeps under the bed by me.

You are a good husband for you have a great knowledge.

They conflict at 12: 30 pm, every night.

I am a student at BBU.

I was a monk when I was 20.

2. Non finite Verb

និយមន័យ: Non-Finite Verb គឺជាប្រភេទនៃក៏រិយាស័ព្ទ ដែលជាទូទៅមិនប្រែប្រួលតាមបទប្រធានរបស់ខ្លួន

ស្លីកឈើ

ឡើយ មិនខ្លល់ថាបទប្រធាននោះ ឯកវិចនៈ ពហុវិចនៈ បុរសទី១ បុរសទី២ បុរសទី៣ etc ។

🔼 Non-Finite Verb ចែកចេញជា ៥ ប្រភេទ

1/ To infinitive

2/ Gerund

3/ Bare Infinitive

4/ Past Participle

5/ Present Participle

2.1 To Infinitive ដើរតួរជា Non-finite Verb.

I want to go home right now.

She needs to see about the dinner for her family.

Nobody goes to take care for him in the hospital.

He wants to suicide when his relative ignores to him.

Why do you wish to leave me.

2.2 Gerund ដើត្តរជា Non finite verb.

EX:

They like speaking English in the meeting. He wants helping me with my work.

I need talking a bout his resignation.

2.3 Bare Infinitive ដើរតួរជា Non finite verb.

EX:

You can stand up when you fall down.

I will get a good result from my exam.

We dare cross the river without a boat.

The hang man can die at once.

2.4 Past Participle ដើរតួរជា Non finite verb.

EX:

I have been living in Siem Reap.

You had just emerged our of poverty.

He has walked across the bridge.

She had made money easily when she was young.

The son has given up his parents for a long time.

2.5 Present Participle ដើរតួរជា Non finite verb.

EX:

He is looking at the foot ball match.

She has been working as a cook at the small restaurant.

They are sleeping well.

I was writing my essay to her.

The family has been staying happily.

3. Transitive Verb.

និយមន័យ: Transitive Verb គឺជាកម្មកិរិយា១ គឺថាជាកិរិយាដែលតែងតែទាមទារបទកម្ម ។

គ្រប់ករណីទាំងអស់ចំពោះ Transitive Verb តែងតែបង្ហាញឱ្យឃើញនូវសកម្មភាព ហូរចេញពីបទ ប្រធាន ហើយឆ្លងទៅបទកម្មជាអ្នកទទួល ។ **Transitive Verb** មានដូចជា: Dig, Drive, Play, Cook, Cut, Kill, Buy, Drink, Eat, Kiss, Sniff, EX:

The man is digging the roots of the flowers.

He drives a car every day.

The kids play the soccer.

She cooks for every body here.

I needs to buy some candies for my children.

We sniff the fragrant flower.

4. Intransitive Verb

និយមន័យ Intransitive Verb គឺជាអកម្មក៏រិយាជាប្រភេទនៃក៏រិយាស័ព្ទ ដែលជាទូទៅមិនទាមទារបទកម្មទេ ពោលគឺក៏រិយាមួយបែបនេះ តែងបង្ហាញឱ្យឃើញថា សកម្មភាពមិនហូរឆ្លងពីបទប្រធាន ចូលទៅបទ កម្មដែលបទកម្មនេះទូទៅតែងទទួលយកពួវអំពើពីគេ។

Intransitive verb មានដូចជា: Cry, Laugh, Smile, Sleep, Think, Listen, Come,

Go, Walk, Run, Sit, Stand, Creep, Crawl, Ring, Dance, Cough, Sneeze, Die, Swear, Promise, Wistle, Jump, Leap, etc

និងពព្ធកិរិយាស័ព្ (Auxiliary verb and special verb)

EX:

The baby cries loudly.

Please, sleep well in my home to night.

You have to stand straight up.

The armies are crawling up the mountain.

She wants to go home to morrow.

He runs quickly.

Nobody dare to sit by her.

Please, come in and sit down.

The herd is walking quietly.

5. Linking Verb ឺហៅថា Intransitive of Incomplete Predication.

និយមន័យ: Linking Verb គឺជាប្រភេទនៃក៏វិយាស័ព្ទដែលប្រាប់ន័យ មិនពេញលេញ រឺ មិនគ្រប់គ្រាន់ ពពួក ក៏វិយាស័ព្ទទាំងនេះ ជាទូទៅមិនអាចបង្កើតអត្ថន័យរបស់ខ្លួនឱ្យបានគ្រប់គ្រាន់ទេនៅពេលពួកវាត្រូវបាន គេប្រើតែពីម៉ាត់តទល់ជាមួយប្រធាន ដូច្នេះក៏វិយាស័ព្ទមួយអំបូរនេះ ត្រូវការពាក្យដទៃដើម្បីមក ជួយ បង្រប់អត្ថន័យរបស់វា ។

Linking Verb មានដូចជា: Be, Look, Appear, Go, Turn, Taste, Feel, Smell, Sound, Seem,

Grow. Become, Get.

***Linking Verb Be**

5.1 Be + Noun / Adj + Noun / Adj => Linking Verb.

EX:

I am a good monk.

You are the police.

He is very sad.

They are good children.

```
English Grammar
       We are the simple people.
       She is cheerful with every thing around her.
5.2 Be + Preposition => Be นำ Full verb.
EX:
       I am at home.
       They are at the seaside.
       She is outside the classroom.
       They are from England.
5.3 Be+ Ving / Past participle => Be ເ Auxiliary Verb
EX:
       I am learning English.
       She is watching T.V.
                                            Be + Ving => Be is Auxiliary verb
       He is working at the restaurant
       We are drinking beer
       English is learned by my students
       This book is written in 2010
       She is missed by me every day
                                           Be +Past participle=>Be is Auxiliary Vweb
       The man was killed last night
5.4 Be ប្រើក្នុងចំលើយខ្លី១ Be ជា Special Verb
Are you a teacher? yes, I am,
                       No, I'm not
Is he a police? Yes, he is
                    No, he is not
                                                  =>Be is special verb
I am your father? yes, you are
```

5. 2.1 Look + Adjective => look is Linking verb

EX:

You look handsome today

She looks stringy.

We look happy completely.

5.2.2 Look + Preposition => look is full verb

EX:

She looks at me unhappily.

He looks down the poor.

My honey looks through the text.

5.3 Appear+ Tobe +adjective=> Appear is linking verb.

EX:

The question appears to be difficult.

He appears to be drunk.

She appears to be jealous of her brother.

They appear to be angry with us.

5.4.1 **Go** + **Adjective** => Linking Verb

EX:

She goes jealous of me.

He goes crazy indeed.

You go smart to day.

```
5.4.2 Go + Preposition => go is full verb.
       She needs to go to the office.
       He goes to school by car.
       I go to the restaurant every evening.
5.5 Turn + Preposition => Turn is Full verb
EX:
       Please, Turn on the light.
       Do not turn off the radio.
       He turns back the car quickly.
5.6. Tast + Adjective => Test is Linking verb.
EX:
       This soup tasts good.
       It tasts sour.
       That cake tasts sweet.
5.7. Fell + Adjective => Feel is linking verb.
 EX:
       I feel cheerful now.
       He feels unsatisfactory.
       She feels sorry for that.
5.8. Smell + Adjective => smell is linking verb.
EX:
       This flower smells fragrant.
       The perfume smells alcoholic.
       It smells bad.
5.9 Sound + Adjective => sound is Linking verb.
EX:
       It sounds fine.
       That family sounds happy.
       you sound beautiful tonight, my honey.
5.10/ Seem + Tobe + Adjective => Seem is Linking verb.
EX:
       It seems to be all right to go there.
       This year seems to be possible to get married.
       The party seems to be boring so much.
5.11. Grow + Adjective => Grow is Linking verb
EX:
       The sky grows dark right now.
       My girlfriend grows clever and beautiful.
       She grows charming.
5.12. Become + Adjective / Noun => Become is Linking verb.
EX:
       I want to become a professor at the future.
       You become dull time and time a gain.
       She becomes sick.
5.13. Get + Adjective => Get is Linking verb.
EX:
       His wife gets hopeless.
       She gets motherless.
```

He gets angry at once.

They get crazy indeed.

6. Special verbs

Definition : Special Verb គឺជា ក្រុមក៏វិយាស័ព្ទមួយប្រភេទដែលមានឥទ្ធិពលក្នុងការបង្កើតទ ម្រង់សំនួរ រឺ ទំរង់បដិសេធ ដោយការចាប់យកពាក្យ "Not" រឺប្រើក្នុងការឆ្លើយនូវសំនួរខ្លីៗ ។

*special verb នៅក្នុងភាសាអង់គ្លេស មានទំរង់ទាំងអស់ ចំនួន ១២ គឺ : Be, Do, Have, May, Will, Shall, Must, Ought (to), Used (to), Need, Dare, Can មានករណីក្នុងការប្រើប្រាស់ដូចតទៅ :

ករណីទី ១

formative	Interrogative	Negative
I do	Do I?	I do not.
I am	Am I?	I am not.
I have	Have I?	I have not.
I may	May I?	I may not.
I will	Will I?	I will not.
I shall	Shall I?	I shall not.
I must	Must I?	I must not.
I ought to	ought I to?	I ought not to.
I used to	Used I to?	I used not to.
I need	Need I?	I need not.
I dare	Dare I?	I dare not.
I can	Can I?	I can not.

ការណីទី ២: ប្រើក្នុងចំលើយខ្លី១ ជាលក្ខណប្រយោគស្រប (Agreement) or (Negative).

EX:

Do you do your job? Yes, I do/ No, I don't. Do you do your job? yes, I do / No, I don't.

=> Do ទី១ដើរទូរជា Auxiliary Verb. do ទី២ ដើរតួរជា Full Verb.

yes, I do No, I don't => Do ទាំងពីរនេះ ដើរតួរជា Special Verb.

You can not do the work, can't you?

=>C an ទី១ ដើរតួរជា Auxiliary Verb. រីឯ Can ទី២ ដើរតួរជា Special Verb.

7. Auxiliary Verb or Helping Verb.

Definition: Auxiliary Verb គឺជាផ្នែកមួយរបស់ Special Verb ដែលមានចំនួន ១២

Auxiliary Verb មានតួរនាទីសំរាប់ជួយ ក៏រិយាស័ព្ទផ្សេងទៀតក្នុងការបង្កើតទម្រង់

រឺកាលផ្សេង១ ដោយយោងទៅតាមករណីទីទៃពីគ្នា ។ Auxiliary Verb មាន 12 គឺ :

Be, Do, Have, Must, Dare, Need, Will, Shall, Ought (to), Used, (to), Can, May,

ការប្រើប្រាស់ Auxiliary Verb ទាំង១២ មានដូចខាងក្រោម

7.1 Auxiliary Be

```
ការណីទី១: Auxiliary Verb BE ត្រូវបានគេប្រើក្នុងកាលកំពុងបន្ត The Present Continuous Tense
Form: [S + Tobe + V + Ing + Obi]
EX:
       You are learning English grammar with Mr. Long vuthy
       He is working at the night time
       They are listening radio in the study
Form: [S + Was/Were + V + Iing + Obi]
EX
       He was living in the heart of the town last year
       I was sleeping well last night
       Yesterday, she was calling to him
       The future continuous tense
Form: [S + Will/Shall + Be + V + Ing + Obj]
       He will be talking me to the temple on sunday
       He will be coming here soon
       I will be learning to drive a car
The Present Perfect Tense
Form: [S + Have/Has + Been + V + Ing + Obj]
EX:
       I have been living in Siem Reap
       He has been teaching English grammar
       They have been working as the robbers
ករណីទី២: Auxiliary Verb Be ្រើក្នុង passive voice
Form: [S+Tobe+Past\ Participle]
EX:
       English grammar is used everyday
       The watch was stolen two days ago
       The book is bought
ករណីទី៣: Auxiliary Verb Be ប្រើជួយបង្កើត immediate future
Form: [S + Tobe = Am, Is, Are + Going + To + V + Obj]
EX:
       I am going to talk to her
       It is going to rain heavy
       They are going to get married
       [S + Tobe + About + To + V]
       He is about to jump up
       She is about to return to pp
       They are about to laugh
ការណីទី 4: Auxiliary Verb Be ប្រើជាមួយ To មានដំណើរដូច Must ដើម្បីបញ្ជាក់ករណីកិច្ចរឹ
       ការបង្ខិតបង្ខំ
Form: [S + Be + To + V]
EX:
```

She is to leave just now.

They are to show their commitment.

I am to tell her that I do love her.

ការណីទី ៥: Auxiliary Verb Be ប្រើ Just About ដើម្បីព្រិត្តិការណ៏អនាគតរឹតតែអោយជិតទៅ១

Form: [S + Be + Just About + To + V]

EX

She is just about to get married.

He is just about to try.

I am just about to go to bed.

ការណីទី៦: Auxiliary Verb Be ប្រើជាមួយ on the point of បញ្ជាក់នូវព្រិត្តិការណ៍មែនទែន,

Form: [S + Be + On the point of + Ving + Obj]

EX:

He is on the point giving up the lessons.

She is on the point buying TV.

I am on the point of running away.

ករណីទី៧: Auxiliary Verb Be ប្រើបញ្ជាក់នូវលក្ខណៈផ្លូវចិត្ត រឺរាងកាយតែពេល

នេះវាដើរតួរជា Full Verb ម្តង

Form: [S+Be+Adi]

EX:

I am so cold now.

She is excited.

He is calm.

They are so hot.

My son is happy.

ករណីទី៨: Auxiliary Verb Be ត្រូវបានគេប្រើដើម្បី ប្រាប់នូវរឿងរ៉ាវអំពីមនុស្ស-សត្ថ- ។ល។

EX:

He is a good teacher.

She is a midwife.

We are the carpenters.

The dog is in the garden.

The bridge was old and old.

ករណីទី៩: Auxiliary Verb Be ប្រើក្នុងកាលកំពង់បន្តជាមួយពាក្យ Foolish, Happy, Good, Bad,

Wise, Quiet. Noisy, etc.

Form: [S + Be + Being + Adj]

EX:

He is being foolish មានន័យថា គាត់កំពង់តែធ្វើ រឺនិយាយយ៉ាងឆ្កូតក្នុងពេលនេះ

They are being noisy. មានន័យថា ពួកគេកំពង់ធ្វើ រឺនិយាយយ៉ាងឮ

I am being quiet. មានន័យថា ខ្ញុំកំពង់តែនៅស្នេម្រក្នុងពេលនេះ

តែអាចទៅរួចបានដែរ ក្នុងលក្ខណនេះតែមានន័យផ្សេងគ្នាបន្តិច

EX:

He is foolish មានន័យថាគាត់ជាទូទៅធ្វើក្ដី និយាយក្ដីតែងតែឡប់ៗ

They are noisy មានន័យថា ពួកគេជាធម្មតាធ្វើក្ដី និយាយក្ដីច្រើនតែឡូឡា

I am quiet មានន័យថា ខ្ញុំជាប្រក្រតីគឺនៅស្លៀមស្ងាត់

ការណីទី១០: Auxiliary Be ប្រើសំរាប់ អាយុ តែវាដើរតួរជា Full verb

EX:

How old are you? I'm 28 years old.

How old is she? she's 23.

How old is the Angkor Wat? it is 1208 years old.

ការណីទី១១: Auxiliary Be ប្រើសំរាប់ទំងន់ រឺ ទំហំ.

EX: ទំងន់

What is your weight? I'm 70 Killos

What do you weigh? I'm 69 Killos or I weigh 69 Killos.

EX: ទំហំ

how tall are you? I'm 1.66 meters.

How tall is she? she is 1.65 meters

How tall are they? they are 2 meters or so.

តែវាត្រូវបានគេនិយាយយ៉ាងនេះក៏បាន

How height are you? I'm 1.66 meters.

What is her heigh? she is 1.65 meters,

What are their heigh? they are 2 metres or so.

ឺរយើងអាចនិយាយយ៉ាងនេះក៏ទាស់អីដែ

How height are you? I'm 1.66 meters.

How height is she? she's 1.65 meters.

How height are they? they are 2 meters or so.

How height are they? they are 2 meters or so.

ករណីទី១២: Auxiliary Verb Be ត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់តំលៃ តែដើរតួរជា Full verb

EX:

How much is that? that is \$4.

How much are the bikes? they are \$40.

The best cars are \$80.000.

My book is \$ 3.

ករណីទី១៣: Auxiliary Verb Be ត្រូវបានគេប្រើជាមួយ There តែវាដើរតួរជា Full verb.

EX:

There is a horse eating grass by the river.

There are many people believing god.

There were hundred tigers in the forest.

There are hundreds of people on the beach.

7.2 AUXILIARY DO

និយមន័យ: Auxiliary Do ក៏រិយាស័ព្ទ មានតួនាទីជា Auxiliary តែនៅក្នុងការជួយបង្កើតកាល

Simple Present Tense ក្នុងប្រយោកស្រប (Affirmative) ប្រយោកបដិសេធ (Negative)

ស្លឹកឈើ

ស្រយោគសំនួរ (Interrogative) នៅក្នុងកាល Simple Present Tense យើងអាច

ករណីទី ១: Do / Does ក្នុងប្រយោគស្របដើម្បីបញ្ជាក់ន័យឱ្យរឹតតែច្បាស់

Form: [S + Do/Does + V + Obj]

EX:

I do like playing on the sand.

She does tell a lie for that.

They do drink alcohol.

We do like our parents.

I do love you.

ករណីទី ២ បង្កើតទំរង់សំនួរ (Interrogative) ដោយដាក់ Do/Doesនៅខាងមុខប្រធាន,

Form: [Do/Does + S + V + Obj]

EX:

Do you work for them?

Do I ask you?

Does he come to see me?

Does she live in town?

ករណីទី ៣ បង្កើតទំរង់បដិសេធ (Negative) ដោយចាប់ពាក្យ Not.

EX:

He does not help me with my work.

She does not teach in Phnom Penh.

ករណីទី ៤: DO ច្រើដើម្បីអន្ទង់ព្រលឹងដែលតែងតែប្រែថា "សូមមេត្តា" បានសំរាប់តែ ពាក្យ You

ប៉ុណ្ណោះតែចេញជាប្រយោគ you ត្រូវបានគេលប់ចោល.

EX:

Do work hard, my dear son.

Do have dinner with us.

Do drive slowly.

Do help me at once.

បញ្ជាក់ះ ប្រើយ៉ាងនេះ បើមិនជួយទេឈប់រាប់អានគ្នា រឺហៅពិសាបាយបើមិនហូបទេ ឈប់មកលេង

ផ្ទះហ្នឹងទៀត ។

ករណីទី ៥: ប្រើប្រាស់ **Do / Does** ដើម្បីច្យេសវាងប្រើពាក្យដដែលៗ

EX:

Do you like English? Yes, I do./ No, do not

Does he drink beer? yes, he does. / No, he does not.

Do they support you? yes, they do / No, the don't.

7.3 AUXILIARY "HAVE"

ការណីទី ១ Have ត្រូវបានគេប្រើដើម្បីបង្កើត Present perfect tense.

Form: $[S + Have / Has + V_3 + Obj]$

EX:

You have spoken English in the meeting.

He has worked as a police for 4years.

I have loved her for 3 years.

```
ករណីទី ២ Have ត្រូវបានគេប្រើដើម្បីបង្កើត Past Perfect Tense.
EX:
       Mr. Hob had eaten big breakfast before he left home.
       I gave her the flowers that I had bought for her.
       Mrs. priestly came to tell us she had made the coffee.
       There was an oil-painting that I had not seen before.
ករណីទី ៣ Have ត្រូវបានគេប្រើដើម្បីបញ្ជាក់អំពីសកម្មភាពថ្មីៗត្រូវបានគេធ្វើរចហើយ
Form: [S + Has / Have + Just + V_3 + Obj]
EX:
       He has just gone away.
       She has just kicked him out of the room.
       I have just finished my home-work.
ករណីទី ៤ Have ត្រូវបានគេប្រើដើម្បីបញ្ជាក់អំពីកតព្មកិច្ច ( Obligation)
Form: [S + Have/Has + Got + Toinfinitive + Obj]
EX:
        You have got to help you first.
       I have got to admire her beauty.
       She has got to leave me.
ករណីទី ៥ Have ត្រូវបានគេប្រើដើម្បីបញ្ជាក់អំពីការបង្គិតបង្ខំ វិការតាំងចិត្ត = Must.
Form: [S + Have/Has + Toinfinitive + Obj]
EX:
        You have to go home now.
       They have to inform to the police at once.
       He has to buy some water here.
ករណីទី ៦ Have ប្រើជាមួយ Sooner or Better មានន័យស្ថើនិង Should តែអត្ថន័យ គឺបាញ់ឆ្ពោះ
       ចំពោះបច្ចុប្បន្ន និង អនាគត មិនសំរាប់អតីតទេ។
Form: [S + Had + Sooner \ or \ Better + V_1 + Obj]
EX:
        You had better sooner choose her to be your wife.
       He had better maks money properly cater.
       We had better find a good teacher next year.
ចំណាំ: ទំរង់នេះប្រយោគសំនួរធម្មតាមិនត្រូវបានគេប្រើទេ ពេលខ្លះត្រូវបានគេប្រើជាសំនួរ បដិសេធ
        ដូចជា
       Had not you ask her name first?
       Hadn't it be a good thing to make business with him?
       Hadn't he go to bed by then?
ម្យ៉ាងវិញទៀត: វាត្រូវបានគេប្រើជាទំរង់ផ្តល់ឪវាទង៏មានប្រយោជន៍តែប្រើបានត្រឹបតែ You ប៉ុណ្ណេះ
EX:
```

ករណីទី ៧ **Have** ត្រូវបានគេប្រើវាជា future perfect tenses ដើម្បីបញ្ជាក់នូវសកម្មភាពដែលយើង

ស្លឹកឈើ

You had better study English. You had better fly to the moon.

```
គិតថាទង្វើនោះត្រូវបានគេធ្វើចប់ក្នុងពេលអនាគត តែងផ្តើមដោយពាក្យ By, By that
        time, By then .....etc.
Form: \int S + Shall/Will + Have + V_3 + Obj
EX:
       By 7 o'clock my father will have taught his students for one year.
       I shall have written my home work before 8 o'clock.
       All the students will have gone down by then.
       She will have finished every thing next year.
       They will have come back by that time.
ករណីទី ៨ Have ត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់ពីង.ជួយ.បង្ហាត់,នរណាម្នាក់ឱ្យធ្វើអ្វីមួយសំរាប់អនាគត់
Form: [S + Will/Shall/ + Have/Has + Obj + Present Participle]
EX:
       I'll have you driving with one day.
       She'll have my aunty keeping his house.
ករណីទី ៩ Have ត្រូវបានគេប្រើក្នុងលក្ខណ៍ពឹង,ជួយ,បង្ហាត់នរណាកម្នាក់តែសំរាប់បច្ចុប្បន្ន។
       Form: [S + Have/Had + Obj + Present Participle]
EX:
       He has me teaching the children.
       She has us killing him.
       I have you dancing for my party.
       The teacher has us talking each other.
ករណីទី ១០ Have ត្រូវបានគេប្រើក្នុងលក្ខណពឹងឱ្យនរណាម្នាក់ធ្វើអ្វីមួយឱ្យ.
Form: [S + Have / Has + Obj + Adj]
EX:
       she has her car cleaned.
       you have him killed.
       I have the police shot.
ករណីទី ១១ ប្រើជាអតីត: តែអត្ថន័យនៅតែពឹង,ជួយគេធ្វើដដែល,
Form: [S + Had + Obj + V_3]
EX:
       I had my car cleaned yesterday.
       She had the light turned off.
       He had the market destroyed.
ករណីទី ១២ Have + Obj + v3 បើជាប្រយោគសំនូរ រឺ បដិសេធ ត្រូវយក Do មកប្រើ តែអត្តន័យ
        ពឹងគេ, ជួលគេ, រកគេ
Form: [Do/Does + S + Have + Obj + V_3 +?]
EX:
       Do you have your car cleaned every weak.?
       How often do you have your hair cut?
       I don't have my hair cut in one weak.
       You don't have parents looked down.
```

```
ការណីទី ១៣ Have ត្រូវបានគេប្រើយ៉ាងនេះ I won't have + Obj + Present Participle
       មានន័យស៊េនឹង I won't / don't allow this,
EX:
       I won't have them dancing until 2:00PM
       I won't have my son getting married under age.
       I won't have him sitting down to dinner in his over alls.
ការណីទី ១៤ Have ត្រូវបានគេប្រើជា Full Verb or Ordinary Verb ប្រែថា មាន, ស៊ី, ទទួល
       រងពីជំងឺដង្កាត់ផ្សេងៗ
EX:
       He has a white bedroll.
       She has a good family.
       You have a stomachache.
🖎 ចំណាំ ទំរង់ Have got ត្រូវបានគេប្រើនៅអង់គ្លេស ឯវី Haveប្រើជាមួយ Do នៅអាមេរិច
EX:
       Have you got time?
       I have got too many animals at home.
       She has got a good life.
       Do you have time.
       I do have too many animals at home.
       she does have a good life.
ករណីទី ១៥ Have ត្រូវបានគេប្រើមានន័យចូច Take a meal ញ៉ាំអាហាររីភេសជ្ជៈ រឺចូលក្នុងកម្មវិធី
EX:
       We have a good meal on my special position day.
       I have enough beer today.
     He has some drink after dinner.
     All of you have an important lesson by 6:00PM.
       Where do you have a bath?
       We are having a party tomorrow.
ករណីទី ១៦ Have ត្រូវបានគេប្រើដើម្បីធ្វើការអញ្ជើញ ដែលភ្ជាប់ដោយ will you មិនមែនសូរនូវ
       សំនួរទេប្រែថា "សូម"
       Form: [Will + You + Have + Obj +?]
EX:
       Will you have some beer?
       Will you have some tea / coffee?
       តែយើងអាចលុបWill ចោលបាន ដូច្នេះយើងនិយាយយ៉ាងនេះវិញ
       Have some beer?
       Have some tea?
       Have some coffee?
                            7.4 AUXILIARY "MUST"
```

ការណីទី ១ Must ត្រូវបានគេប្រើដើម្បីបញ្ជាក់ពីកតពុកិច្ច (Oblegation) រឺភាពចាំបាច់ (Necessity)

```
ិរិការបញ្ជា (Command ).
Form [S + Must + Infinitive + Obj]
       You must stay away from the taxi girls.
       We must take care of our old parents.
       He must improve your spelling.
       You must go to Phnom Penh.
ការណីទី ២ Must ត្រូវបានគេច្រើនិយាយអំពីបច្ចុប្បន្ន រឺអនាគតជិតៗ
Form: [S + Must + Infinitive + Obj]
EX:
       You must get up earlier tomorrow.
       We must come here before 8 o'clock.
       He must die soon.
ករលីទី ៣ Must ត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់អតីតកាល តែ Must គ្មានទំរង់ទេដូច្នេះជួសដោយ Had to .
Form: [S + Had + To infinitive + Obj]
EX:
       You had to help the lady yesterday.
       He had to listen to the program properly.
       I had to get married her.
ការលីទី ៤ Must ត្រូវគេប្រើសំរាប់ផ្តល់ឱ្យវាទបែបសង្កត់សេចក្តី ប្រើ Ought To or Should បានដែ
        តែ Must នេះល្អជាងគេ និង ប្រើចំពោះការហាមប្រាមផងដែរដោយចាប់យកពាក្យ Not.
Form: [S + Must + V_1 + Obi]
EX:
       You must take more exercise.
       You must read this books it is wonderful one!
       Our daughter must be up at university some day.
       She must not live lonely.
       You must not go in the building without permission.
ករលីទី ៤ Must ត្រូវបានគេប្រើដើម្បីភាពពិត១ ដែលមានហេតុផល ប្រែថាពិតជា
EX:
       You must be boring with everything around your life.
       I must be happy with my love.
       He must be smart.
       She must have a good daughter.
       She must have left already.
ករណីទី ៦: Must ត្រូវបានប្រើដើម្បីបញ្ជាក់អនាគតកាលតែ Must គ្មានទម្រង់ទេត្រូវជួសដោយ
        Will/Shall + Have 1
Form: [S + Shall/Will + Have + Full Infinitive + Obj]
EX:
        I shall have go to the dentist about my bad tooth.
       He will have to stay for a while in the hospital.
       She will have to visit her family on the Khmer new year.
ករលីទី ៧: Must ត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់ធ្វើការបញ្ហារ រឺ បង្ហាត់បង្ហាញអ៊ីមួយ
Form: [S + Must + v_1 + Obj]
```

EX:

All the staffs must be at this hotel by 7: 00AM.

Passengers must cross the line by the foot bridge.

Everyone must pay money before checking out.

ករលីទី ៨ Must ត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់សកម្មភាពអតីត ភ្ជាប់ជាមួយ "Perfect"

តាមធម្មតាមិនត្រូវប្រើក្នុងប្រយោគបដិសេធទេ អាចប្រើ Can រឺ Could ជំនួសវិញ

Form: [S + Must + Have + V3 + Obj]

EX

Everything must have gone away from my family.

They must have got married for along time.

He must have forgotten his old love entirely.

The pone rang but I didn't hear it. I must have been asleep.

* រាល់សកម្មភាពទាំងនេះយើងអាចប្រើ ទម្រង់ខាងក្រោមនេះជំនួសគឺ:

Form: [Can't + Have + V3 + Obj or Could+ Not + Have + V3 + Obj]

EX:

Every thing can't have gone away from my family.

She walked past me without speaking, she can't have seen me.

He can't have fallen in love with the old lady.

She couldn't have sung that song exactly.

ករណីទី ៩ Must ត្រូវបានគេប្រើក្នុង "Continuous Infinitive"

Form: [S + Must + Be + Ving + Obj]

EX:

He must be loving her so much.

I must be learning English with a great teacher.

I must be sleeping at the hospital.

ការណីទី ១០ Must ត្រូវបានគេប្រើក្នុង "Continuous Perfect Infinitive"

Form: [S + Must + Have Been + Ving + Obj]

EX:

They must have been taking sleeping pills last night.

He must have been wearing his seat belt.

I must have been living in Bontheay Meanchey.

5/ AUXILIARY "MAY"

ករណីទី ១ May ត្រូវបានគេប្រើសុំធ្វើការអនុញ្ញាតិ ក្នុងបច្ចុប្បន្ន និង អនាគតប្រើ Can បានដែរតែ

May ទូទៅជាង តាមទ្រឹស្តីតាមការអនុវត្តន៍ទាំងអង់គ្លេស ទាំងអាមេរិចកាំង Can

ទទូទៅជាង.

Form: $[S + V_1 + Obj]$

EX:

You may take a day off whenever you want

They may leave the school as soon as they have finished.

He may smoke his cigarette in the hotel.

ការណីទី២ May ត្រូវបានគេប្រើក្នុងគោលបំណងដេលនាំមុខដោយពាក្យ So, So that, In order that,

Form: [$S + May + V_1 + Obj + So$, So that, In order that $+I + May + V_1 + Obj$]

```
EX:
```

I live here so I may fine a good tine for my life.

She works hard in order that she may be a good teacher.

He stays in my house so that he may save money.

ករលីទី ៣ May ត្រូវបានប្រើក្នុងការសាកសួរនូវសំនួរដោយទន់ភ្លន់

Form: $[May + S + V_1 + Obj ?]$

EX:

May I go into the office?

May I help you, my honey?

May my son learn English with you?

ករល៊ីទី ៤ May ត្រូវបានគេប្រើក្នុងការធ្វើការបួងសួង រឺ ប្រាថ្នាអ្វីមួយ

Form: $[May + S + V_1 + Obj!]$

EX:

May my girlfriend live happily and long

May she succeed in her study!

May I get married her soon!

May my dream come true!

ការណីទី ៤ May ត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់អតីតកាលតែន័យស្មើ(Perhaps)

Form: [S+May+Have+V₃+Obj] [[S+Might+Have+V₃+Obj]

EX:

You may have loved her y You might have loved her.

He may have known my aunty.

She might have gone away.

They may not have worked in Cambodia.

It may have rained.

ករណីទី ៦ May ត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់រឿងរ៉ាវទាំងឡាយដែលអាចទៅរួចបាន

Form: [S+May/Might+V₁+Obj] =Perhaps

EX:

It may rain now.

It might rain now.

I may get married soon.

He might be a good teacher.

🕶 **ចំណាំ:** May ត្រូវបានគេប្រើមានន័យស្រដៀងគ្នានិងCould/Might

EX:

The phone is ringing.

It may be my boss.

It could be my boss.

It might be my boss.

You may have left your money in the market.

You might have left your money in the market.

You could have left your money in the market.

ចំណាំះ តែចំពោះប្រយោគបដិសេធន័យខុសគ្នារវាង May / Might និង Could

Ex:

He could not have seen her (នៅឆ្ងាយពេកកន្លងមើលអត់ឃើញ)

You could not have spoken English (និយាយអត់ចេញទេ)

ប៉ុន្តែបើនិយាយយ៉ាងនេះប្រហែលជាអាចខ្លះៗឬមិនអាចដែរតែសង្ឃឹមជាង "could

EX:

He may have spoken English. He might have spoken English. I may have heard her. You might have seen her.

Auxiliary Verb Can

ករណីទ១: Can ត្រូវបានគេប្រើបញ្ជាក់ពីសមត្ថភាពមានន័យថា ដឹងពីរប្បើបត្រូវធ្វើនូវកិច្ចកានោះៗ

EX:

I can tell you about my idea. She can do her work easily. He can teach English and French. Pedro can speak French.

ការណីទី២: Can ត្រូវបានគេប្រើបញ្ជាក់ពីការអនុញ្ញាត្តិ

EX:

You can go now.
Can I speak with your father?
Can I have your cake?

ការណីទ៣: Can ត្រូវបានបញ្ជាក់ពីភាពអាចទៅរួច។

EX:

You can come and see me any day. She can be angry with your bad speaking. My daughter, Maria can speak in English.

Auxiliary Could

ការណីទី១: Could ត្រូវបានគេដើម្បីបញ្ជាក់ពីសមត្ថភាពក្នុងអតីត:

EX:

He could work longer if he tried harder. I could stop him when he was 7 year old.

ករណីទី២: Could ត្រូវបានគេប្រើបញ្ជាក់ពីភាពទៅរួច។

EX:

If I were you, I could do it easily.

If he had a degree, he could apply for the post.

If only I had a camera, I could take a picture.

ករណីទ៣: Could ត្រូវបានគេប្រើដើម្បីបង្កើតនូវសំណើរដ៏សមគួរ

EX:

Could you tell me the way to PP? Could you have dinner with me?

ការណីទី៤: Could ត្រូវបានគេប្រើបញ្ជាក់ពីកាអនុញ្ញាត្តិ។

EX:

Could I smoke in your room?
Could I have your pen for a while?

ការណី១៥: Could ត្រូវបានគេប្រើក្នុងសំដីប្រយោល។

EX:

She told me that she could help me. They said I could get married.

I said I could finish the work by then.

ការណីទី៦: Could ប្រើបញ្ជាក់ពីកាសង្ស័យ ប្រែថា ប្រហែល

EX:

I could help you next day but you are not honest. His word could be true but I hardly believe it.

Be Able

ទំរង់ Be Able ជាទូទៅត្រូវបានគេប្រើជំនួសឱ្យ (Can and Could)

EX:

"I can do the work" or "I am able to do the work."

"I could do the work" or "I was able to do the work."

ទំរង់ Be Able ប្រើសំរាប់កាលអនាគត Future tense.

EX:

"I shall be able to do the work."

"He will be able to go across the bridge."

ទំរង់ Be Able ប្រើសំរាប់បច្ចុប្បន្នកាលបរិបូរណ៍ Present Perfect.

EX:

"I have been able to do the work."

"He has been able to kill him."

ទំរង់ Be Able ប្រើជា (infinitive)

EX:

- I hope to be able to do the work.
- I think to be able to make money on my own.

ចំណាំ: យើងប្រើ Was/ Were able មិនមែនប្រើ Could ទេ ប្រសិនបើចង់និយាយថា

"អាចធ្វើរឿងអ្វីមួយបាន" ឬ "ទទួលបានជោគជ័យក្នុងការធ្វើរឿងអ្វីមួយ"

EX:

- -Mr Sek worked hard, and was able to pass his examination.
- -She had a holyday last week and was able to go to the temples.

🖎 ប្រយោគទាំងនេះមិនអាចប្រើ Could បានទេក្នុងប្រយោគស្របតែអាចប្រើបាន ក្នុងប្រយោគ បដិសេធ EX:

- -Mr Sek worked hard but couldn't (or wasn't able to) pass his examination.
- -She had a holyday last week but couldn't (or wasn't able to) go to the temples.

7.6 AUXILIARY "DARE"

ការលីទី 9 Dare ត្រូវបានគេប្រើជា Auxiliary Verb ប្រែថា ហ៊ាន

Form: [S+Dare+V₁+Obj]

EX:

You dare walk across the footbridge.

I dare swim without your helping.

He dare ask her to marry.

ការណីទី 🖰 Dare ត្រូវបានគេប្រើជា Ordinary Verb ប្រែថាហ៊ានៗមែនទែន

Form: [S + Dare + To infinitive + Obj]

EX:

You dare to play with the fierce tiger.

I dare to live in the town without any relatives.

He dare to decide himself.

ការណិទី ៣ Dare ត្រូវបានគេប្រើជា Full Verb ប្រែថា បប្អូល

Form: [S + Dare + Obj + To Infinitive]

EX:

I dare you to bet the match.

He dares me to throw the stone to the window.

ការល៊ីទី ៤ Dare ត្រូវបានគេប្រើដើម្បីបញ្ជាក់ការឈឺចិត្តឬការខូចចិត្ត

Form: $[How + Dare + S + V_1 + Obj ?]$

EX:

How dare you say like that?

How dare he betray his parents?

How dare she give up her husband?

How dare you love her?

How dare you talk to him?

ករណីទី ៥ Dare ត្រូវបានគេប្រើជាមួយកិរិយាស័ព្ទ Say បទប្រធានបានតែ I ទេប្រែថា សន្មតថា

"ជឿវថា ឬ ប្រែថា "ខ្ញុំទទួលយកបាននូវអ្វីដែលអ្នកនិយាយ" ន័យគ្រាមភាសា

EX:

I daresay, there are many deer in the forest.

I daresay, he really loves his girlfriend forever.

I daresay, you drive on the left in Thailand.

🕶 **ចំណាំ:** Dare ពេលប្រើជាមួយ Nobody , Somebody , Anybody, Everybody, ជាដើម

To" ស្រេចលើចិត្តមានន័យថាប្រើក៏បានមិនប្រើក៏បាន

EX:

Nobody dared to speak with prime minister ឬ អាចនិយាយយ៉ាងនេះ

Nobody dared speak with prime minister.

7.7 AUXILIARY "NEED"

ការណីទី 9 Need ត្រូវបានគេប្រើជា Auxiliary Verb

Form: $[S + Need + V_1 + Obj]$

EX:

I need make money to support my family.

You need work hard to be a good guy.

He need call to her on Sunday.

ការណិទី 💆 Need ត្រូវបានគេប្រើជា Ordinary Verb

Form: [S + Need + To infinitive + Obj]

EX:

You need to go home now.

We need to take a walk to the town.

He need to help her with her work.

ករហិទ ៣ Need ត្រូវបានគេប្រើជាមួយ Noun ,Pronoun, Gerund តែវ៉ាដើត្តជា Ordinary Verb

Form: [S +Need +Noun /Pronoun/Gerund]

Do you need me to help?

I need her so much.

He need sleeping in the night time.

We need our parents everyday.

🕶 **ចំណាំ** Need ត្រូវបានគេប្រើដែលអត្ថន័យនោះដូច Want ដែរ

EX:

This window want cleaning now.

This window needs cleaning now.

ការណីទី ៤: Need ត្រូវបានគេប្រើជា Noun វិញម្តង

EX:

A friend in need is a friend indeed.

There is no need to explain this word.

I am in need of a good car this year.

ករណីទី **៥: Need** ត្រូវបានគេប្រើជា Adjective ដោយបន្ថែមពាក្យ less ខាងចុងហើយក្លាយជាឃ្លាដោយ ភ្ជាប់ ជាមួយ To say ហើយប្រែថា " ដូចជាអ្នកធ្លាប់ដឹងរួចមកហើយ រឺ ប្រែថា ស្ទើតែមិនចាំបាច់ និយាយ ក៏បានដែរ"

EX:

Needless to say, I do love you, darling.

Needless to say, we are very poor.

Needless to say, he works for his family.

🖎 ចំណាំ:តាមពិត Need នេះកម្រគេប្រើក្នុងប្រយោគស្រប ច្រើនតែប្រើក្នុងប្រយោគសំនួរ និងប្រយោគបដិសេធ ប្រើក្នុងប្រយោគស្របតែងអមដោយពាក្យ Hardly, Scarcely, Rarely, Only,ជាដើម,

EX:

I hardly need say how much I love you.

He rarely need take it easy at noun-time.

She scarcely need talk with the boys.

```
ករណីទី ៦: Need ត្រូវបានគេប្រើជាទំរង់យ៉ាងនេះ Needn't + Perfect សកម្មភាពមិនចំាបាច់ធ្វើទេ
        តែត្រូវគេធ្វើរួចហើយ ជាខ្លះខ្លាយពេលវេលាទទេៗ,
EX:
       You needn't have bought some food "ទិ៣វចហើយ"
       He needn't have changed his mind "ផ្លាស់រួចហើយ"
       We needn't have worked hard for that " ធ្វើការរួចហើយ "
ករណីទី ៧: Need ត្រូវបានគេប្រើក្នុងការឆ្លើយក្នុងសំនួរបដិសេដខ្លីៗ
EX:
       Who needn't go home before lunch? I needn't.
       Is there anyone who needn't get up for breakfast? Yes, I needn't.
       តែបើចំលើយនោះស្របត្រូវយក Must មកប្រើកុំប្រើ needn't ឡេត
EX:
       Need you go home now? yes, I must.
       Need you get married her? yes, I must.
ការណិទ្ធ ៤: Need ត្រូវបានគេប្រើជា Auxiliary Verb ក្នុងន័យ សំនួរអាចយក Need មកដាច់ពីមុខ
       បើបដិសេធយើងប្រើ Need Not .
Form: [S + Need + V_1 + Obj]
EX:
       You need cone home by 9 o'clock.
       We need make money for our family.
       He need reject his bad speaking.
       Need he pay money back?
       She need not sing the song.
ការណិ៍ខ ៩: Need ត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់សកម្មភាពចាំបាច់ ធ្វើខ្លួនយើងតែជា Full Verb
Form: [S + Need + To + V_1 + Obj]
EX:
       You need to clean your hands.
       I need to live in Bontheay Meanchey Province.
       He needs take more exercise.
កូវល៊ីខ ១០: Need ត្រូវបានប្រើជាមួយ V + ing សំរាប់សកម្មភាពដែលត្រូវបានគេធ្វើ,
Form: [S + Need + Ving + Obj]
EX:
       It is a difficult problem, it needs thinking about properly.
               ( It needs to be thought)
       Do you think my jacket need washing?
       The policeman needs moving his home.
                            7.8 AUXILIARY "WILL"
ករណីទ 🤊 Will ត្រូវបានគេប្រើក្នុង Simple Future Tense
```

ស្លីកលើ

Form: $[S + Will + V_1 + Obj]$

```
EX:
       I'll let you know everything for that.
       You will obey your parents whole heartedly.
       He'll come back again.
ការណីទី២ Will ត្រវិបានគេប្រើដើម្បីបញ្ជាក់អំពីការសខចិត (Willingness) ប្រើបានគ្រប់បរស
        ទាំងអស់ហើយភ្ជាប់ជាមួយ If clause តាមធម្មតា Will នេះមិនប្រើក្រោយ If
       clause ទេ តែនេះជាករណីលើងលែង
Form: [If + S + Will + Infinitive + Obj +, + S + Will + V_1 + Obj]
EX:
       If I will see you, I will say hello to you.
       If he'll listen to me carefully, I'll be able help him.
       If she'll love my family, I'll get married her.
ករណីទី ៣ Will ត្រូវបានគេប្រើក្នុង The Future Continuous Tense.
Form: [S + Will/Shall+Be + Ving + Obj]
EX:
       He will be speaking English fluently.
       She will be helping the poor people.
       The will be waiting for us at the theater / theatre.
       We shall be talking to each other on next Monday.
ការណីទី ៤ Will ត្រូវបានគេប្រើដើម្បីធ្វើការ ៉ អញ្ជីញ រឺ ការស្នើរសំ ៉
Form: [Will + You + V_1 + Obj +, (Please)?]
EX:
        Will you have tea with me, please?
       Will you go and see my family, please?
       Will you give me our pen, please?
       Will you help her with her work, please?
🖎 ចំណាំ : ប្រើបានត្រឹមតែ You ទេ ហើយមិនប្រែបែបសំនួរដូចធម្មតាទេ ប្រែថា "សូមមេត្តា"
ករណីទី ៥ Will ត្រូវបានគេប្រើដើម្បីបញ្ជាក់នូវទំលាប់បែបអត្តចរិក,
Form: [S + Will + V_1 + Obj]
EX:
       She will talk about nothing but the late husband.
       He will read the English grammar after dinner.
       I will support my old parents.
       She will sit for hours listening to the wireless.
ការណឺទី 🗟 Will ត្រូវបានគេប្រើក្នុងភាពប្រហែល រឺ សា្មនក្នុងពេលអនាគតដែលអមដោយកិរិយា
       Expect, Know, Suppose, Think, Doubt, Believe, Feel sure, និង Adverb
        មយចំននដចជា Probably, Perhaps, Possibly, Surely, តែពាក្យទាំងនេះមិនត្រូវ
       ប្រើជាមួយប្រយោគទេ ប៉ុន្តែ ប្រើក្នុងសេចក្តីប្រែ
Form: [S + Will + V_1 + Obj]
EX:
       He will be the robber.
```

She will be my wife.

They will come soon.

The famous man will save me within 7 days.

ករណីទី ៧ Will ត្រវប្អានគេប្រើសំរាប់អនាគតសុទ១ ហើយWill នេះអាចប្រើបានគ្រប់បរសទាំងអស់

យើងអាចប្រើ Shall បានដែលតែ Will នេះទូទៅជាងគេ

Form: $[S + Will + V_1 + Obj]$

EX:

you will see that she is so charming.

She will be 23 next year.

He will be 32 tomorrow.

Tomorrow will be Sunday.

When shall we see you again.

I will need the car on 15th.

He will buy the car in 2014.

ការលីទី ៨ Will ត្រូវបានគេប្រើដើម្បីបញ្ជាក់ការតាំងចិត្ត (Volition)ត្រូវអានលើកសំលេងត្រង់ Will ឱ្យខ្លាំង

Form: [S + Will + V₁ + Obj]ការតាំងចិត្តបែបសុខចិត្ត

EX:

I will carry my lovely book = I am willing to carry my lovely book.

You will come and see me at the hospital= you are willing to.

She will get up for breakfast by 8 o'clock = she is willing to.

Form: [S + Will + V₁+ Obj] ការតាំងចិត្តបែបសំនួរ

EX:

I will try to do better next time= I will promises to.......

We will see you at noon-time = we will promise to

Hw will come back late tonight = he will promise to......

I will defeat him completely = I will promise to

Form: [S + Will + V₁ + Obj] ការតាំងចិត្តបែបប្តេជ្ញា

EX:

I will become a good English teacheer = I am determined to......

I will make money for my old parents = I am determined to

We will help each other, all the same=.....

🖎 **ចំណាំ**: រាល់សកម្មភាពបែបគំរោងត្រូវធ្វើ រឺ ត្រូវបានគេរ្យេបចំឡើងដាច់ខាត់កំប្រើ Will

ត្រូវប្រើ Going to ជំនួសវិញ,

EX:

I will buy a new car next month.

We will get married on Sunday.

He will phone his girl-friend after all.

I am going to buy a new car next month.

We are going to get married on Sunday.

He is going to phone his girlfriend after all.

ការល៊ីទី ៩ Will ត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់សកម្មភាពទាំងឡាយណាដែលយើងសំរេចចិត្ត ធ្វើអ្វីមួយគ្នង

ពេលកំពង់និយាយភ្លាមៗ

```
Form: [S + Will + V_1 + Obj]
EX:
       What would you like to drink? = "I'll have an orange juice, please"
       Do you phone her? "I'll phone her now"
       Oh, you have left the door open. = I'll go and shut it.
ការណីទី ១០ Will ត្រូវបានគេប្រើជាន័យបដិសេធគឺ Won't ន័យស្មើនិងពាក្យ "Refuse" ដោយ
       សេចក៏ថាពេលប្រែ ត្រវប្រែថា "បដិសេធមិន"............
       Form: [S + Won't + V_1 + Obj]
EX:
       I've tried to advise him but he won't listen to me.
       He goes out every day because I won't talk to him.
       They work at night time so they won't sleep at that time.
ក្សាហ៊ី 99 Will ត្រូវបានគេប្រើជា Future Perfect Continuous Tense
Form: [S + Will / Shall + Have + Been + V_3 + Obj]
EX:
       I will have finished my writing by 12 o'clock.
       You will have stopped the natural bush fire by then.
       We will have lived happily by that time.
🕸 តាមទ្រឹស្តីនិយាយថា I and We ត្រូវប្រើជាមួយ Shall ឯ He, She, It and They ត្រូវប្រើជាមួយ
        Will ក្នុងអនាគតកាលសុទ្ធ១ ចំពោះអនាគតពាក់ព័ន្ធនិងអារម្មណ៍ I and We ត្រូវប្រើជាមួយ
        Will ឯ He, She , It, They, ត្រូវប្រើជាមួយ Shall ម្តង តែភាសាអង់គ្លេសសម័យទំនើប
       នេះយើងឃើញថា Will ត្រូវបានគេប្រើស្ទើគ្រប់បុរសទាំងអស់លើកលែងក្នុងប្រយោគ
        សំនួរជាលក្ខណស្នើសុំប៉ុណ្ណេះទើបច្រើ shall
EX:
       Shall we go home?
       Shall I eat something at Angkor Wat?
       Shall I turn back?
       Shall we get married next year?
       Shall I open the window?
                               7.9 AUXILIARY "SHALL"
របៀបប្រើប្រាស់ Auxiliary Shall ត្រូវបានគេប្រើជាមួយ I and We ចំនែក He, she, It, they,
       ប្រើជាមួយ will ក្នុងអនាគតសុទ្ធ១ បើពាក់ព័ន្ធជាមួយអារម្មណ៍ I and We ត្រូវបាន
       គេប្រើជាមួយ Will ឯ He, She, It, They, ប្រើជាមួយ Shall (BOOK II)
ការណីទី 9 Shall ត្រូវបានគេប្រើក្នុងបញ្ជា ( Command ).
Form: [S + Shall + V_1 + Ob_i]
EX:
       You shall not come my home again.
       He shall not have the bike later.
       She shall work harder.
ក្សាហ៊ីទី 💆 Shall ត្រូវបានគេប្រើក្នុង ការសន្យា ( Promise )
```

ស្លឹកឈើ

```
Form: [S + Shall + V_1 + Obj]
       You shall have a holiday tomorrow.
       She shall read this English grammar book.
ករណីទ ៣ Shall ត្រូវបានគេប្រើក្នុងការ កំរាមកំហែង ( Threat )
Form: [S+Shall+V_1+Obj]
EX:
       The police shall punish you.
       He shall kill the stupid man.
🖎 ចំណាំ : Shall រាល់ការប្រើប្រាស់ទាំងនេះត្រូវបានគេឈប់ប្រើហើយ រឺ ជៀសវាងហើយក្នុងភាសាអង់គ្លេស
       សម័យទំនើនេះ តែចំពោះប្រយោគសំនួរ Shall នៅមានមុខដដែល ពោលគឺគេប្រើសំរាប់សួរនូវ
       ឆនៈមនសដែល យើងនិយាយទៅកាន់,
Form: [Shall + S + V_1 + Obj + ?]
EX:
       Shall I open the door?
       Shall I take your money?
       Where shall we go now?
       Shall we kill him some day?
       shall you take a rest in the restaurant?
       shall we get married next year?
ចំណាំះ ប្រយោតខាងលើទាំងនេះ យើងចង់បានការផ្តល់យោបល់ពីមនុស្សដែលយើងនិយាយទៅកាន់។
       អតិត:របស់ Shall គឺ Should ឯ Would ជាអតីត:របស់ Will.
ការល៊ីទី 🤊 Should ត្រូវបានគេប្រើគ្រប់បុរសទាំងអស់ដើម្បីបញ្ជាក់ពីករណីយកិច្ច រឺ តួនាទីដេលប្រែថា "គួរតែ"
Form: [S + Should + V_1 + Obj]
EX:
       You should keep your promise.
       WE should obey our parents.
       You should study this book every day.
       she should know now to set up everything on the table.
ការណ៊ីទី 🖻 Should ត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់អតីតៈកាល ដែលផ្ទុយពី shall សំរាប់អនាគត តែ
       Wouldទូទៅជាង ក្នុងស្ថានភាពទាំងនេះ ប្រែថា នឹង
Form: [S + Should V + Vbj]
EX:
       He should wine the match, He thought.
       She expected she should carry the book.
       I should study my lesson for hours.
ករណិ៍ទី ៣ Should ត្រូវបានគេប្រើក្នុងទំរង់សមគួរមានន័យដូច ( Want ) តែ Would ទូទៅជាង,,
       [S + Should + Like + To infinitive + Obj ]
EX:
       I should like to help her.
       He should like to pay a visit at Angkor Wat.
       I should like to have food regularly.
```

ស្លឹកឈើ

```
What should you like to drink?
       Would you like to pay me now?
       would ទូទៅជាង ល្លងជាង will you .....? ទៅឡើត
ការណ៊ីទី ៤ Should ត្រូវបានគេប្រើក្នុងការហាមប្រាមចំពោះរឿងអាក្រក់ដែលយើងគិតថា មិនត្រូវធ្វើ
       តែ Must មានទំងន់ជាង
Form: [S + Should + Not + V_1 + Obj]
EX:
       You should not believe what you read.
       He should not say like that for my parents.
       We should not do the same way.
កូវលឺទី ៩ Should ត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់រឿងរ៉ាវទាំងឡាយណា ដែលយើងរំពឹងថានិងកើតឡើង,
Form: [S + Should + V_1 + Obj]
EX:
       My girl friend should be a good mother.
       She should pass the examination.
       All the people should die at the future after all.
       We should love each other.
កូវល្លឺទី ៦ Should ត្រូវបានគេប្រើជា Perfect តែសកម្មភាពមិនត្រូវបានគេបំពេញទេ ពោលគឺប្រើជាប្រយោធ
ស្របតែ អតន័យបដិសេធ បើបដិសេធន័យបែរជាស្របវិ៣,
       [S + Should + Have + V_3 + Obj]
EX:
       You should have learned French,
       I should not have drunk so much beer.
ករហិទី ពី Should ត្រូវបានគេប្រើជាមួយឃ្លា I think, I don't think, Do you think ជាដើម,
EX:
       I think we should live in the town.
       Do you think I should choose another way?
       I don't think he should be my uncle?
ក្សារី ជ Should ត្រូវបានគេប្រើដើម្បីផ្តល់នូវឪវាទ វី គំនិត
Form: [S + Should + V_1 + Obj]
EX:
       You should go to bed by 11: 00 PM.
       You should take care of your life by yourself.
       The government should help me first.
       The policeman should be killed.
ការណិទ ៩ Should ត្រូវបានគេប្រើជាមួយ Continuous Infinitive អត្ថន័យតែងផ្ទុយគ្នា ប្រើដើម្បីបញ្ជាក់
       នូវសកម្មភាពទាំងឡាយណាដែលមិន ត្រូវបានគេបំពេញ រឺ ធ្វើទាំងល្ងង់ រឺ ដោយមិនមានការប្រុង
        ប្រយ័ត
Form: [S + Should + Be + Ving + Obj]
EX:
```

We should be wearing the seat belt (អត់បាន៣ក់ទេ) He should be spending all his time on the beach (ធ្វើរួចហើយ) I should be getting married her (អត់បានប្យើបការទេ) They shouldn't drive too fast on the busy road. (បើករថហើយ) *ក្សាល្លឺទី* **១០** Would ត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់សកម្មភាពអតីតផ្ទុយនិង Will. Form: $[S + Would + V_1 + Obj]$ EX: He said he would be twenty-five next birthday. I would write the songs for hours under the tree. **ករណីទី ១១** Would ត្រូវបានគេប្រើជាមួយ Like សំរាប់ការគួរសមន័យ ស៊ើនិង Want. Form: [S + Would + Like To infinitive +Obj] EX: I would like to stay in Cambodia now. What would you like to drink? Would you like to come to dinner tomorrow? ករណីទី 🤏 Would ត្រូវបានគេប្រើក្នុងលក្ខ័ណ្ឌគរួសមបំផុតចំពោះការអញ្ចើញ មិនមែនសួរទេ ប្រែថា "សូមមេត្តាទានប្រោស" Form: [Would + You + Mind + Gerund + Obj +?] Would you mind having dinner with me? Would you mind staying here? Would you mind telling me the way? ការណិទី ១២ Would ត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់ទំលាប់ក្នុងអតីត:មានលក្ខណ:ដូច Used to ដែលតាមរូបមន្តគឺ : Form: $[S + Would + V_1 + Obj]$ EX: I would take a bath in the morning when I was a monk. He would come to my home last year. She would live happily with family. 7.10 AUXILIARY "OUGHT (TO)" **ករណីទី ១: Ought to** ត្រូវបានគេប្រើជាមួយ Perfect infinitive តែមិនត្រូវបានគេបំពេញ វី ធ្វើនូវ សកម្មភាពនោះៗទេ យើងអាចប្រើ Should បានក្នុងការងាររបស់ Ought to Form: $[S + Ought to + Have + V_3 + Obj]$ EX: You ought to have told me for that before (អាំបានប្រាប់ទេ) We ought to have got married in 2004 (អត់បានប្យើបការទេ)

He ought to have said sorry to her (អត់បាននិយាយទេ)

ការណីទី ២ Ought to ត្រូវបានគេប្រើជាមួយ Continuous Infinitive សកម្មភាពមិនបានគេបំពេញ រឺ

ធ្វើទេ យើងអាចប្រើ Should ក្នុងទីតាំងរបស់ Ought to

Form: [S + Ought + To + Be + Ving + Obj]

EX:

You ought to be studying chiness.

He ought to be wearing his seat belt.

ការលឺទី ៣ Ought to ត្រូវបានគេប្រើបញ្ជាក់ចំពោះការឱ្យឱ្យវាទ យើងអាចប្រើ Should បានផងដែរ

ក្នុងករណីនេះ តែទោះជាយ៉ាងណា Must ល្អជាងគេ

Form: [S + Ought + To + V + Obj]

EX:

You ought to work hard, my dear son!

He ought to stop smoking soon.

She ought to rule her group.

ការណីទី ៤ Ought to ត្រូវបានគេប្រើក្នុងបច្ចុប្បន្ន្យុ,អតីត, អនាគត ក្នុងលក្ខណៈទន់ភ្លន់

Form: $[S + Ought to + V_1 + Obj]$

EX:

You ought to phone me to morrow.

He ought to get up early today.

I knew I ought to have eaten something before 8 o'clock.

We ought to love our neighbors now.

ការណីទី ៥ Ought to ត្រូវបានគេប្រើក្នុងលក្ខណប្រហាក់ប្រហែល

Form: $[S + Ought to + V_1 + Ob_i]$

EX:

Prices ought to come down from today on.

My book ought to be useful for the monks.

7.11 AUXILIARY "USED (TO)"

ការណិទី 🤊 Used to ត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់ទំលាប់ដែលឈប់បន្តទ្យេត

Form: [S + Used(to) + V + Obj]

EX:

There used to be a house there.

I used to miss my girlfriend.

He used to live in poverty.

She used to answer my phone.

₩ បើប្រយោកបដិសេធ ត្រូវប្រើយ៉ាងនេះ គ្រប់បុរស់ទាំងអស់,

Form: $[S + Used + Not + To + V_1 + Obj]$

EX:

I used not to tell a lie.

He used not to drive the car.

She used not to work hard.

🕸 បើប្រយោគសំនរយើងអចាច្រើយាំងនេះ គ្រប់បុរសទាំងអស់

Form: $[Used + S + To + V_1 + Obj]$

EX:

Used you to love her?

Used she to reject your idea?

Used he to shut the door suddenly?

🕸 បើប្រយោគបដិសេធយើងអាចប្រើយ៉ាងនេះ គ្រប់បុរសទាំងអស់

Form: $[S + Did + Not + Use + To + V_1 + Obj]$

EX:

I didn't use to borrow his books.

He did not use to stay with us.

She did not use to talk back to her parents

Form: $[Did + S + Use + To + V_1 + Obj + ?]$

EX:

Did you use to live in London?

Did she use to walk past this building?

Did he use to visit her?

‡ ចំពោះទំលាប់ជាបន្តបន្ទាប់យើងអាចប្រើ Would ជំនួស Used to បាន។ តែ Used to

មិនអាចប្រើជំនួស ដោយ Would បានទេក្នុងទំលាប់ដែលឈប់ហើយក្នុងអតិតៈ

Every morning I used to teach English grammar.

Every morning I would teach English grammar.

ᢤ យើងមិនអាចប្រើ Would ជួស Used to ក្នុងស្ថានភាពអតីត: មិនបន្តបែបនេះទេ

I used to smoke here.

He used to take care of his parents.

I would smoke here

He would take care of his parents.

ការណ៍ទី២ Used (To) ត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់ទំលាប់បច្ចុប្បន្នដោយវ៉ាមិនមានទំរង់បច្ចុប្បន្ន លោកអ្នកប្រាជ្ញ

សំរេចប្រើយ៉ាងនេះ,

Form: [S + Tobe/ Get/ Become + Used + To + N/ Gerund/ Pronoun]

EX: I will get used to this weather soon.

I am used to noise.

He gets used to working head in the questhouse.

They get used to traveling around Siem Reap.

I am used to it. I was used to it.

I get used to him. I got used to him.

I become used to my wife ប្រពន្ឋមិនដែលផ្តល់ភាពអំពល់ដល់ខ្ញុំ ការរំខានណាមួយទេ ទាំងខ្ញុំក៏មិន ខ្វល់ពីសកម្មភាពទាំងឡាយរបស់នាងដែរ ជាធម្មតាយើងប្រែថា ខ្ញុំស៊ាំនិងប្រពន្ឋខ្ញុំហើយ.

🖎 ចំណាំ: ប្រយោគទាំងនេះប្រែថា "ស៊ាំនិង" Used ទីនេះដើរតួ (Adjective)to ដើរតួជា (Preposition) ។

☀លក្ខណៈពិសេសរបស់ Auxiliary Verb មានដូចតទៅ

Auxiliary Verb ត្រូវបានគេចែកជាបី គឺ:

- 9 Principle auxiliary verb.
- 2 Modal auxiliary verb.
- 3 Semi auxiliary verb.
- 1 Principle auxiliary verb भाड : Have, Be, Do.
- 2 Modal Auxiliary Verb धाड : Must, Will, May, Can, Shall, Ought to.
- 3 Semi Auxiliary Verb ម៉ាន Need, Dare, Used to .
- នធំណាំ: Principle Auxiliary Verb គឺមានត្រឹមតែបីគឺ Have ,Be ,Doព្រោះថាអំបូរនៃ
 ការិយាស័ព្ទទាំងនេះមិនទាមទារអត្ថន័យទេ គឺថាជួយសុទ្ធសាធ ឯរី Modal Auxiliary Verb
 មាន ៦ នោះតែងទាមទាររកអត្ថន័យពេលស្ថិតក្នុងប្រយោគនីមួយ១ ដោយសេចក្ដីថា
 ពួកវាត្រូវការសេចក្ដីប្រែឬតំលៃខ្លួនវាជាដរាបខុសប្លែកពី Principle Auxiliary Verb
 ចំពោះ Semi Auxiliary Verb ឯណោះវិញ បើយើងប្រៀបធៀបមកមនុស្សតំលៃខ្លួន
 វាស្មើនិងមនុស្សខ្ចើយ(P.D) ដោយសេចក្ដីថា មិនប្រាកដប្រជាផ្នែករាងកាយសំលេង
 ចរិយាមារយាទ មិនស៊ីគ្នាយ៉ាងនេះមានន័យថា ជាប្រុសក៏បាន ជាស្ត្រីក៏បានយ៉ាងណា
 Semi Auxiliary Verbពេលខ្លះ ពួកវាបែរជាដើរតូរជួយគេ ហើយទាមទាររកតំលៃខ្លួនទៀត
 តែពេលខ្លះ ពួកវាបែរជាដើរតូរជា Full Verb វិញ គឺថា លែងជួយគេទៀតហើយ ព្រោះហេតុ
 នោះទើបលោកអ្នកប្រាជុឱ្យឈ្មោះថាការិយាស័ព្ទពាក់កណ្ដាល(Semi Auxiliary Verb) ។

The End of Auxiliary verbs

INFINITIVE

- 8. Infinitive គឺជាប្រភេទនៃកិរិយាស័ព្ទដែលមានលក្ខណៈបរិសុទ្ធ។ វាត្រូវបានគេបែងចែកជា៣ប្រភេទគឺ
 - 1. Bare Infinitive
 - 2. Full Infinitive
 - 3. Split Infinitive
 - 8.1 Bare Infinitive ជាប្រភេទនៃក៏វិយាស័ព្ទដែលគ្នាន "To"ឬ "Ing" (ឯកោកិវិយាស័ព្ទ)

Form: [S + Modal + Bare Infinitive + Obj]

Ex: You will see her next year.

She must go away from you.

He can make money by himself.

8.2 Full Infinitive គឺជាប្រភេទនៃក៏រិយាស័ព្ទ ដែលតែងតែមាន To ជាដរាប.

Form: [S+V+To Infinitive/Full Infinitive+Obj]

Ex: We start to study English grammar today on.

He needs to contact with the pretty girl.

She decides to live in the city.

```
8.3 Split Infinitive គឺជាប្រភេទនៃកិរិយាស័ព្ទដែលត្រូវញែកដោយគុណកិរិយា។ Form: [S + V + obj + to + adv + v] Ex: My parents want me to at once go home.
```

He allows her to quickly speak English.

I need you to carefully listen to our grandmas.

្យប្រភពរបស់ infinitine ត្រូវបានគេចែកជា ៦ ចំពួកគឺ

- 1.Present Infinitive
- 2. Present Progressive Infinitive
- 3.Perfect Infinitive
- 4. Perfect Progressive Infinitive
- 5. Present Infinitive passive
- 6.Perfect Infinitive Passive

1.Present Infinitive

Form: [....To +The base of a Verb + Obj]

EX:

I want to find out her idea

She needs to correct the fault of her son

They would like to finish the program suddenly

2. Present Progressive Infinitive

Form: [....Tobe + V+Ing]

Ex:

He decides to be working for her all the same

She wants to be living in pp

We needs to be talking more detail

3.Perfect Infinitive

Form: $[\ldots To have + V_3 \ldots]$

She seems to have worked hard for along time

He wants to have passed the exam

They like to have defeated the foes

4. Perfect Progressive Infinitive

Form: $[\dots To have + Been + V + Ing]$

EX:

I refuse to have been surrendering him

He decides to have been coming back home

They want to have been telling the truth

5. Present Infinitive Passive Voice

Form: $[\dots Tobe + V_3 \dots]$

EX:

We didn't expect to be invited to party

I want the match to be changed at once

He needs to be paid for that.

6. Perfect infinitive passive Voice

Form: [....To have + Been + V₃......]

EX:

We need the policeman to have been killed soon

The program seems to have been interested

I would like him to have been saved



នៅក្នុងភាសាអង់គ្លេស Infinitive អាចមានតួនាទីដូចជា Noun ដែរពោលគឺ

```
1. Infinitive ដើរតួរជាប្រធានរបស់ក៏រិយា(Subject of Verb )
      2. Infinitive ដើរតួរជាកម្មបទរបស់ក៏វិយា(Object of Verb)
      3. Infinitive ដើរតួរជាបទបំពេញន័យ(Complement)
      4. Infinitive ដើរតួរជាគុណនាមបញ្ជាក់ន័យអោយនាម(Adjective)
      5. Infinitive ដើរតួរជាកិរិយាស័ព្ទពិសេសបញ្ជាក់ន័យឱ្យកិរិយា(Adverb)
      6. Infinitive ដើរតួរជាកម្មបទរបស់អាយតនិបាត(Object of Preposition)
1. Infinitive ត្រូវបានគេប្រើជាប្រធានរបស់ក៏រិយាស័ព
Form: [To Infinitive + Singular Verb + ....]
EX:
      To tell a lie is a bad habit
      To see is to believe
      To eat is to live
      To live is to eat
      To learn English is not easy
2.Infinitive ត្រូវបានគេប្រើជាកម្មបទរបស់ក៏វិយាស័ព
Form: [S + Reporting Verb +To Infinitive + Obj ]
EX:
      I expect to marry her soon
      He decides to live with her forever
      They refuse to come with us
3.Infinitive ដើរតួរជាបទបំពេញន័យ(Compliment)
Form: [S + Tobe + Infinitive + Obj ]
EX:
      You are to work harder
      He is to take care of his health cock
      My free time is to watch the boxing match
4.Infinitive ដើត្តរជាគុណនាមបញ្ជាក់ន័យឱ្យនាម(Adjective)
Form: [S + V + Noun + To infinitive ....]
EX:
      We have some topics to discuss today
      She has got news to inform to you
      There is nothing to speak with you
5.Infinitive ដើរតួរជាគុណកិរិយាស័ព្ទពិសេស(Adverb of Purpose)
Form: [....+ To Infinitive +......]
EX:
      He eats to live everyday
      I study to qualify for a good professor of English
      Angkor wat is very interesting to visit
6.Infinitive ដើរតួរជាកម្មបទរបស់អាយតនិបាត(Object of Preposition)
```

Form: [.......Preposition (But/Except) + To Infinitive]

Sometimes she doesn't have other way but to marry. The children have no choice except to cry loudly. Now, I don't have anything in the word but to marry.

He can't do nothing except to miss her

The End of Infinitive

Conjugations of the Verb

9. Conjugations of the Verb គឺជាការបំបែកកិរិយាស័ព្ទ ច្រើជាមួយប្រធាន

(Subject) តែប្រធាននៅទីនេះគឺសំដៅទៅរកបុរសទី៣ឯកវិចន: មានដូចជា He, She, It, រួមដោយ នាមឯកវិចនមួយចំនួនដែលមានតំលៃស្មើនិងវាព្រោះថា នៅក្នុងភាសាអង់គ្នេស ក៏រិយាស័ព្ទធម្មតាទាំង អស់តែងប្រែបូលជាដរាបដោយការបន្ថែម S, Es, Ies, នៅខាងចុងនៅពេលដែលពួកវាច្រើជាមួយ បុរសសទី៣ ឯកវិចន ។

EX:

He, She, It, talks

He, She, It, goes.

A boy talks.

A girl talks.

I, we, they, you talk.

Two boys talk.

Two girls talk.

ការណីទី ១ ក៏រិយាស័ព្ទបន្ថែម (S) ខាងចុងជាមួយ He, She, It, រឹឯកវិចននាមគឺជពពួកក៏រិយាស័ព្ទ

ដែលបញ្ចាប់ដោយព្យញ្ជនៈ រឺ ស្រះ រឺ ស្រះផ្សំ ដូចជា : B, C, D, E, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, P, Q, R, T, V, W, Oy, Ey, Ay, Uy,

EXAMPLES

Infinitive	with he, she, it/ singular verb.
To grab	He, she, it grabs.
To organize	He, she, it organizes
To dig	He, she, it digs
To laugh,	He, she, it laughs.
To talk	He, she, it talks.
To kill	He, she, it kills
To clean	He, she, it cleans.
To claim	He, she, it claims.
To pump	He, she, it pumps.
To swear	He, she, it swears.
To chat	He, she, it chats.
To bow	He, she, it bows.
To say	He, she, it says
To buy	He, she, it buys.
To obey	He, she, it obeys.
To annoy	He, she, it annoys.

ស្លឹកឈើ

ករណីទី ២ ត្រូវបន្ថែម Ies គឺជាក្រុមនៃក៏រិយាស័ព្ទដែលបញ្ចប់ដេយ (Y) ឈរនៅក្យេកនិងព្យញ្ជន នៅពេលដែលប្រើខាងក្រោយ He, She, It, ត្រូវបន្ថែម (Ies).

EXAMPLES

Infinitive	With He, she, It, singular verb.
To cry	He, She, It, Cries.
To fly	He, She, It flies.
To fry	He, She, It fries.
To dry	He, She, It dries.

ករណីទី៣ ត្រូវបន្ថែម (Es) ជាមួយក៏វិយាស័ព្ទដែលបញ្ជាប់ដោយ O. X. Ss. Sh. Ch.

នៅពេលប្រើខាងក្រោយ He, She, It ក៏រិយាស័ព្ទមានដូចជា Go. Box, Kiss, Wash, Match

EXAMPLES

Infinitive	With He, She, It,
To go	He, She, It Goes.
To box	He, She, It boxes.
To kiss	He, She, It kisses.
To wash	He, She, It washes.
To match	He, She, It matches.

The End of the conjugations of the Verbs

Regular Verb and Irregular verb.

10. Regular Verb and Irregular Verb

1/ Regular Verb

និយមន័យ: គឺជាប្រភេទនៃកិរិយាស័ព្ទឡេងទាត់ ពោលគឺក្រុមនៃកិរិយាស័ព្ទប្រភេទនេះតែង ត្រូវបានរក្សានូវទំរង់ដើម ពេលត្រូវគេប្តូរទំរង់ពោលគឺទម្រង់ Present ទៅជា Past Tense or Past Participle ពួកវ៉ាគ្រាន់តែបន្ថែម D, ED,ខាងចុងតែប៉ុណ្ណោះ ។

EXAMPLES

Infinitive / Present	Past tense	Pat participle.
Open	Opened	Opened.
Laugh	Laughed	Laughed.
Persecute	Persecuted	Persecuted.
Want	Wanted	Wanted.
Start	Started	Started.
Look	Looked	Looked.
Need	Needed	Needed
Allege	Alleged	Alleged
Hospitalize	Hospitalized	Hospitalized.
Walk	Walked	Walked.

2 Irregular Verb

និយមន័យ: Irregular Verb គឺជាប្រភេទនៃកិរិយាស័ព្ទ មិនទ្យេងទាត់ពោលគឺ ពេលត្រូវបាន

គេប្តូរពីទម្រង់ Present ទៅជា Past Tense or Past Participle តែងតែមិនរក្សាបាននូវ ទ្រង់ទ្រាយដើមទេ ដោយសេចក្តីថាមិនត្រូវការពាក្យ ED or D មកប្រើដាក់ខាងចុងទេ ។

EXAMPLES

Inf	initive/present	EXAMPLES Past tense	Pat participle
9	Abide	Abided/abode	Abided/abide មានលំនៅ រស់នៅអត់ទ្រាំ
ឲ្រ	Arise	Arose	Arisen កើតមានឡើង
៣	Awake	Awoke	Awoken ភ្ញាក់ រឺ ដាល់
G	Backbite	Backbitten	Backbitten បង្ខូចកេរីឈ្មោះ ទិទៀន
ជួ	Backslide	Backslid	Backslid ធ្លាក់ វីធ្វើអំពើអាក្រក់ម្តងទៀត
ઠે	Be	Was/Were	Been នៅ,ជា,មាន,គឺជា
៧	Bear	Bore	Borne កើត,ទ្រាំ,លីទ្រ
ផ	Beat	Beat	Beaten វ៉ាយ ប្រាក ទូង
દ્વ	Become	Became	Become ក្លាយជា ទៅជា
90	Befall	Befell	Befallen កើតមានដល់
99	Beget	Begot	Begotten នាំអោយ, បង្កើត
១២	Begin	Began	Begun ចាប់ផ្តើម
១ ៣	Behold	Beheld	Beheld សង្កេតមើល
૭૯	Bend	Bent	Bent ពត់, អោន,បត់,ធ្វើឱ្យកោង
୭ଝ	Beseech	Besought	Besought អង្វរករ,ទទូចសុំ
9៦	Beset	Beset	Beset រំខានឥតឈប់ឈរ
อต	BespeakBespoke	Bespoken/bespoke បង្ហាញ	បកស្រាយ
១៨	Bestride	Bestrode	Bestridden ជិះច្រកក្បេរិ
මදි	Bet	Bet/Betted	Bet/Betted ភ្នាល់
្ខា០	Bid	Bade/Betted	Bidden/Bid បញ្ជា,ដេញថ្លៃ
១១	Bind	Bound	Bound ប៉ង់សង់
ច្រ	Bite	Bit	Bitten ខាំ,ចិក,ទិច
២៣	Bleed	Bled	Bled ស្រក់ឈាម, បង្ហូរឈាម
២៤	Bless	Blessed	Blessed/Blest ប្រសិទ្ធិពរ, អោយពរ
වස්	Blow	Blew	Blown/Blowed បក់,រជាក

මව Bread	Bred	Bred ជ្រលក់ម្សៅលាប
ยก Break	Broke	Broken បែក,ធ្លាយ, បំពាន
២៨ Bread	Bred	Brought បង្កាត់ពូជ, អប់រំ
២៩ Bring	Brought	Brought នាំយកមក
mo Broad east	Broadcast	Broadcast ផ្សព្វផ្សាយ, ប្រកាស
๓๑ Build	Built	Built កសាង, បង្កើត
៣២ Burn	Burned	Burnt ដុំត, ឆេះ, រលាក
៣៣ Burst	Burst	Burst ធ្វើឱ្យបែក, ផ្ទុះ
៣៤ Buy	Bought	Bought ទិញ្ , ចាក់ពុម្ភ
៣៥ Cast	Cast	Cast គប់, ចោល, គ្រវែង
mอ Catch	Caught	Caught ចាប់, គាំង, ឃាត់
๓๗ Choose	Chose	Chosen ជ្រើរើស
៣៨ Chide	Chided/Chide	Chided/ Chide/ Chidden ស្ដីបន្ទោស
๓๕ Cleave	Cleaved	Clave/Cleaved ស្ពោះត្រង់
60 Cling	Clung	Clung ពោង ,ប្រកាន់ខ្ជាប់
69 Come	Came	Come មក, មកដល់, ក្លាយជា
ଓଡ Cost	Cost	Cost មានតំលែ, ឱ្យតំលៃ, គិតថ្លៃ
๘๓ Countersink	Counter sank	Countersunk ខ្លួង
сс Creep	Crept	Crept ល្អន, លប, វ៉ា
હર્ષ Crow	Crowed	Crowed រងាវំ, ស្រែកអប់អរសាទរ
යි Cut	Cut	Cut កាត់
GM Deal	Dealt	Dealt ចែកប្បើរ
ସେ Dig	Dug	Dug ជីក, ពេញចិត្ត
હર્દ્ધ Dive	Dove	Dived លោតចូលក្នុងទឹក
៥o Do	Did	Done ធ្វើ, បំពេញ, ផលិត
ชอ Draw	Drew	Drawn គូរ, ទាញ, ហូត
ช่อ Dream	Dreamed	Dreamt សុបិន្ត, យល់សប្តិ

ะส Drink	Drank	Drunk ជីព
ะ Drive	Drove	Driven បើកបរ, ធ្វើឱ្យ
៥៥ Dwell	Dwelt	Dwelt រស់នៅ
t at	Ate	Aaten ពិសារ ស៊ី, ញ៉ាំ, សោយ
ะก Fall	Fell	Fallen ធ្លាក់, រម្យេល
ะส Feed	Fed	Fed ចិញ្ចឹម, បញ្ចុក, ឱ្យចំណី
te Feel	Felt	Felt មានអារម្មណ៍
bo Fight	Fought	Fought វ៉ាយ, ប្រយុទ្ធ
อง Find	Found	Found រកឃើញ, ផ្គល់ឱ្យវិញ
อต Flee	Fled	Fled រត់គេច
ອີຫ Fling	Flung	Flung បោកចោល, ក្រវិ
୭୯ Fly	Flew	Flown ហោះហើរ
อะ Forbear	Forbore	Forborne ទ្រាំ, ទប់, អត់ធ្នូត់
ออ Forbid	Forbad	Forbidden ៣មឃាត់
อิต Foretell	Foretold	Foretold ប្រាប់មុន, ព្យាករណ៍
อิต Forget	Forgot	Forgotten ភ្លេច, បំភ្លេច
වස් Foresee	Forecast	Forecast ទាយ, ព្យាករណ៍
no Forecast	Forecast	Forecast ទាយ, ព្យាករណ៍
ฟ๑ Forgive	Forgave	Forgiven លើកលែងទោស
ฟอ forsake	Forsook	Forsaken បោះបង់ចោល
nm forewear Forewore	Forsworn ជំទាស់, បដិសេធ	
ฟิ Freeze	Froze	Frozen កក, ធ្វើឱ្យកក
ମଧ୍ୟ Gainsay	Gainsaid	Gainsaid ប្រកែក, បដិសេធ
ฟอ Get	Got	Got ទទួល
ฟฟ Gild	Gilden/Gild	Gilden/ Gild ស្រោមមាស
៧៨ Gird	Girden/Girt	Girden/Girt ក្រវ៉ាត់, ឡោមព័ទ្ធ
ฟิธ์ Give	Gave	Given ឱ្យ, បរិច្ចាគ

៨០	Go	Went	Gone ទៅ, លិច
สอ	Grind	Ground	Ground កិន, សំល្បេង,រវៃ
ឌ្យា	Grow	Ground	Grown ដាំដុះ, រឹកសូតលាស់
៨៣	Hamstring	Hamstringed	Hamstrung ធ្វើឱ្យពិការ
៨៤	Hang	Hung	Hanged ព្យួរ
લુદ્ધ	Have	Had	Had មាន
લુક	Heave	Heaved/Hove	Heaved/Hove លើកបោះ ឈឺធ្ងន់
៨៧	Hew	Hewed	Hewed/Hewn កាប់ចាក់, ប្រព្រិត្តិ
៨៨	Hide	Hid	Hidden เกา่
લદ્વ	Hold	Held	Held កាន់, យូរ
දි0	Hit	Hit	Hit វ៉ាយ, ទ្រ, ជួបប្រទះ
ଧ	Hurt	Hurt	Hurt ធ្វើឱ្យរង់ទុក្ខ, ធ្វើឱ្យឈឺចាប់
ද්ව	Inlay	Inlaid	Inlaid ដាំត្បូង
ස්ග	Input	Input	Input/inputted សួនាំ, ស៊ើបសួរ
કૃદ	Inset	Inset	Inset លាក់, ដាក់ចូល
gr g	Interweave	Interwove	Interwoven ត្បាញ, វេញ, បញ្ចូលគ្នា
હુરુ	Keep	Kept	Kept រក្សាទុក, រក្សា
ଝ୍ୟ	Ken	Kenned	Kenned ក្រាស, ធ្វើឱ្យគេដឹងឮ
ह्रष	Kneed	Knelt/Kneeled	Knelt លុតជង្គង់
દ્વદ	Knit	Knitted/Knit	Knitted/Knit ចាក់អាវ, ប៉ាកអាវ
900	Know	Knew	Known ដឹង, ស្គាល់, ចេះ
909	Lay	Laid	Laid ដាក់, ក្រាបពង
୭୦๒	Lead	Led	Led ដីកនាំ
๑๐๓	Lean	Leaned	Leaned ផ្នែក, ទោទៅ
୭୦៤	Leap	Leaped	Leaped លោត
୭୦ଝ	Learn	Learned	Learnt ព្រីន. សិក្សា
90៦	Leave	Left	Left ចាកចេញ, ទុក

๑๐๗	Lend	Lent	Lent ឱ្យគេខ្លី
១០៨	Lie	Lay	Lain ដេកសន្នឹង, ទំរេត
७०६	Light	Lighted	Lighted បំរ្លឺ
990	Lose	Lost	Lostបាត់បង់, ខាត, ចាញ់
999	Make	Made	Made ធ្វើ, ផលិត
99b	Mean	Meant	Meant ចង់និយាយ, មានន័យ
ออก	Meet	Met	Met ជូប, ប្រទះ
୭୭៤	Miscast	Miscast	Miscast លែងទទួលស្គាល់
୭୭ଝ	Misdeal	Misdealt	Misdealt សេពគប់, ខុស,ក្បត់
୭୭៦	Mishear	Misheard	Misheard ស្ដាប់ច្រលំ
ออต	Mishit	Mishit	Mishit វ៉ាយច្រឡំ
១១៨	Mislay	Mislaid	Mislaid ច្រឡំដែ
99ಕ	Mislead	Misled	Misled នាំឱ្យខុស, នាំឱ្យវង្វេង
୭୭୦	Misled	Misled	Misled វិង្វេងផ្លូវ, យល់ខុស
୭ଅ୭	Misspell	Misspelled	Mispelt ប្រកបខុស
១២២	Misspend	Misspent	Misspent ចំណាយខុស
១២៣	Mistake	Mistook	Mistaken ច្រឡំ, យល់ខុស
୭୭୯	Misunderstood	Misunderstood	Misunderstood យល់ខុស
୭୭୯	Mow	Mowed	Mown កាត់ស្នៅ
ବଷତ	Outbid	Outbid	Outbid ដេញថ្លៃលើស
១២៧	Outdo	Outdid	Outdone ធ្វើឱ្យល្អជាងគេ
១២៨	Outfight Outfought	Outfought ប្រយុទ្ធបានជោគ	ដួល
90ද	Outgrow	Outgrew	Outgrown ធំហូស
๑๓๐	Outrun	Outran	Outrun ធ្វើឱ្យរតលឿនហួស
๑ ៣୭	Output	Outputted/output	Outputted/output ទិន្នផល
១៣២	Outsell	Outsold	Outsold លក់ដាច់លើស
១៣៣	Outshine	Outshone	Outshone ចែងចាំងពន្លឺខ្លាំង

๑๓๔	Overbid	Overbid	Overbid ដេញថ្លៃលើសគេ
୭୩ଝ	Overcome	Overcame	Overcame ឈ្នះ, យកឈ្នះ, ពុះពារ
๑๓๖	Overdo	Overdid	Overdone ចំអ៊ិនយូរ
១៣៧	Overdraw	Overdrew	Overdrown សរសេរហូសពីចំនួនប្រាក់ដែលមានក្នុងកង
១៣៨	Overeat	Overate	Overeaten ហូបច្រើនជ្រុល
୭୩ଝ	Overfly	Overflew	Overflown ហោះរំលងពីលើ
୭៤୦	Overhang	Overhung	Overhung ព្យួរពីលើ
୭୯୭	Overhear	Overheard	Overheard ពូដោយថៃដន្យ
ବ୍ରଣ	Overlay	Overlaid	Overlaid ដាក់ រឺ ត្រលប់ពីលើ
อ๔๓	Overpay	Overpaid	Overpaid ចំណាយហូស
୭୯୯	Override	Overrode	Overridden លើសលប់
୭୯қ	Override	Overran	Overrun រាតត្បាត
୭୯୭	Oversee	Oversaw	Overseen មើលខុសត្រូវ
୭ଣୋ	Overshoot	Overshot	Overshot ជាញ់
୭୯୯	Oversleep	Overslept	Overslept ដើកជ្រុល
૭૯૬	Overtake	Overtook	Overtaken ចូលរួមក្នុង
୭ଝ0	Overthrow	Overthrew	Overthrown ផ្តួលរំលំ, ទំលាក់
୭୯୭	Partake	Partook	Partaken វ៉ាហួស, ទាន់
ବ୍ୟାଣ	Pay	Paid	Paid បង់លុយ, ចេញថ្លៃ
<u> ១</u> ៥៣	Plead	Pleaded	Pleaded អង្វរករ, សុំ
୭ଝ୯	Prepay	Prepaid	Prepaid ចំណាយមុន, កក់
୭୯୯	Prove	Proved	Proved បង្ហាញភស្តុតាង
୭୯୭	Put	Put	Put ដាក់, រោយ, លាប
อะเป	Quit	Quit	Quit បោះបង់, ចាញ់
୭ଝର୍ଷ	Read	Read	Read អាន, មើលស្បេរភៅ
<u>ଚନ୍ନ</u>	Rebind	Rebound	Rebound ចងឡើងវិញ
9៦0	Recast	Recast	Recast ផ្សាចេញ

๑๖๑ Redo	Redid	Redone ធ្វើឡើងវិញ
๑๖๒ Rehear	Reheard	Reheard ស្ដាប់ឡើងវិញ
9อต Remake	Remade	Remade ធ្វើឡើងវិញ
9වර Rend	Rent	Rent ហែក
๑๖๕ Repay	Repaid	Repaid សងប្រាក់វិញ
9៦៦ Rerun	Reran	Rerun លេងម្តងទ្បើត
จอก Resell	Resold	Resold លក់ម្តងទ្បើត
๑๖๘ Reset	Reset	Reset ដាក់សារជាថ្មី
๑๖៩ Resit	Resat	Resat ប្រឡងឡើងវិញ
จ๗o Retake	Retook	Retaken ថតឡើងវិញ
จต่อ Retell	Retold	Retold ប្រាប់ឡើងវិញ
จิตโย Rewrite	Rewrote	Rewritten សរសេរឡើងវិញ
๑๗๓ Rid	Rid	Rid ធ្វើឱ្យលែងមាន
១៧៤ Ride	Rode	Redden ជិំ៖, បើកបរ
૭៧៥ Ring	Rang	Rung ចុចកណ្ដឹង, សូរស័ព្ទ
๑๗๖ Rise	Rose	Risen រះឡើង, ក្រោកឡើងវិញ
១៧៧ Run	Ran	Run រិត៌
១៧៨ Saw	Sawed	Sawn អាឈើ
๑៧៩ Say	Said	Said និយាយ, សូត្រ
୭៨୦ See	Saw	Seen ឃើញ, មើលឃើញ
9ต9 Seek	Sought	Sought រឹះរក, រាវរក, ស្វែងរក
១៨២ Sell	Sold	Sold លក់
១៨៣ Send	Sent	Sent ផ្ញើ, បញ្ជូន
୭៨៤ Set	Set	Set ដាក់
อสะ Sew	Sewed	Sewn ប៉ាក់, ដេរ
9ต่อ Shake	Shook	Shaken អង្រ្គន, ញាក់, ញ័រ (ដែ)
9ติ Shear	Sheared	Shorn កាត់, កោរយករាម

១៨៨ Shed	Shed	Shed សំរក់, បង្ហូរ, ជម្រុះ
១៨៩ Shine	Shone	Shone បញ្ចេញស្លី, ចាំវស្លី
980 Shit	Shat	Shat បត់ជើងធំ, ជុះអាចម័
9ද්9 Shoe	Shod	Shod ពាសក្រចកសេះ
๑៩๒ Shoot	Shot	Shotបាញ់, ថត
๑៩៣ Show	Showed	Shown បង្ហាញ, សំដែង
૭૬૯ Shrink	Shrank	Shrunk រួញ, ធ្វើឱ្យរួញ
๑๕๕ Shrive	Shrove	Shriven ធ្វើឱ្យស្វិត
98්ව Shut	Shut	Shut ប៊ិត
๑៩៧ Sing	Sang	Sung ច្រ្រឹង
๑๕๘ Sink	Sank	Sunk លិច, មុជ
૭૬૬ Sit	Sat	Sat អង្គុយ, ក្រាប
boo Slay	Slew	Slain សំលាប់រង្គាល, យ៉ាងសាហាវ
๒๐๑ Sleep	Slept	Slept ដើក,គេង,ផ្គុំ, សិឹង
bob Slide	Slid	Slid រអិល, ធ្លាក់ច៖ុ, តិច១
bom Sling	Slung	Slung គ្រវែង, ត្រកង
bog Slink	Slunk	Slunk លបៗ, គេចឱ្យផុត ដោយប្ដូរ
bog Slit	Slit	Slit ហែក បើក
ნინ Smell	Smelled	Smelt ធំក្លិន, ហិតក្លិន
bon Smite	Smote	Smitten ប្រឹងវ៉ាយយ៉ាងខ្លាំង
bog Sow	Sowed	Sown សាបព្រូស
bog Speak	Spoke	Spoken និយាយ, ថ្លែង
๒๑๐ Speed	Sped	Sped បង្កើនល្បើន
๒๑๑ Spell	Spelled	Spelt អាន, ប្រកប
២១២ Spotlight	Spot lit	Spot lit ចំណាយ, ចាយ
២១៣ Spill	Spilt	Spilt កំពប់
๒๑๔ Spread	Spread	Spread សាយកាយ

๒๑៥ Spring	Sprang	Sprung លោត,រលាស់ឱ្យទៅវិញ
๒๑๖ Stand	Stood	Stood NIII
๒๑๗ Stave	Stove	Stove ធ្វើឱ្យទ្រុឌចូល
๒๑๘ Steal	Stole	Stolen ល្អច, អ៊ក
๒๑៩ Stick	Stuck	Stuck ប៊ិទ, ចាក់, ដោត
๒๒๐ Sting	Stung	Stung ទិច, មុតបន្លា
๒๒๑ Stink	Stank	Stunk មានក្លិនអាក្រក់
bob Strew	Stewed	Stewed/strewn គ្រីប
២២៣ Strede	Strode	Stridden ដើរជំហ៊ានវែង
ยย Strike	Struck	Struck ធ្វើការវ៉ាយប្រហា
២២៥ String	Strung	Strung ដាក់ខ្សែចង, ចងខ្សែ
๒๒๖ Strive	Strove	Striven ប្រឹងប្រែង, តស៊ូ
២២៧ Sublet	Sublet	Sublet ជួលបន្ត
២២៨ Swear	Swore	Sworn ស្បថ
๒๒៩ Sweep	Swept	Swept ពេស , លាង, ជូត
๒๓๐ Swell	Swelled	Swollen ហើម, ប៉ោងឡើង
๒๓๑ Swim	Swam	Swum ហែលទឹក
bmb Swing	Swung	Swung បក់ស្លាប, ទះស្លាប
២៣៣ Take	Took	Taken យក, ទទួល
២៣៤ Teach	Taught	Taught បង្រៀន, បង្ហាត់
២៣៥ Tear	Tore	Torn ហែក, ធ្វើឱ្យរហែក
๒๓๖ Think	Thought	Thought គិត, ពិចារណា
២៣៧ Thrive	Throve	Thrived ចំរើន, លូតលាស់ល្អ
២៣៨ Throw	Threw	Thrown បោះ, ចោល, គប់គ្រវែង
២៣៩ Thrust	Threw	Thrown ចាប់បង្ខំ, សំរុកចូល
๒๘๐ Tread	Trod	Trodden ដើរជាន់លើ
๒๔๑ Unbend	Unbent	Unbent តំរង់

๒๔๒ Underbid	Underbid	Underbid ដេញថ្លៃទាបជាង
២៤៣ Undercut	Undercut	Undercut ដេញថ្លៃទាបជាង
២៤៤ Undergo	Underwent	Undergone អត់ធន់
๒๔๕ Underlie	Underlay	Underlaid ចាក់នៅក្រោម,ក្រាលដាក់បាត
๒๘๖ Underpay	Underpaid	Underpaid ឱ្យប្រាក់ពលកម្មទាប
๒๔๗ Undersell	Undersold	Undersold លក់ក្នុងតំលៃថោក
២៤៨ Understand	Understood	Understood យល់
๒๔๔ Undertake	Undertook	Undertaken សន្យា, ធានា
๒๕๐ Underwrite	Underwrote	Underwritten ជាំទ្រ
๒๕๑ Undo	Undid	Undone ស្រាយ, (ចំណង)ធ្វើឱ្យអន្តរាយ
๒๕๒ Unfreeze	Unfroze	Unfrozen មិនកក មិនកកស្ទះ
២៥៣ Unsay	Unsaid	Unsaid និយាយត្រួសៗឡើងវិញ
๒๕๔ Unwind	Unwound	Unwound សំរាកបន្លួកាយ
២៥៥ Upset	Upset	Upset ធ្វើឱ្យក្រឡាប់
๒๕๖ Wake	Woke	Wokenដាស់, ភ្ញាក់ពីដេក
๒๕๗ Waylay	Waylaid	Waylaid ឃ្លាំមើល, ស្ទះមើល
๒๕๘ Wear	Wore	Worn ពាក់, ស្លឿកពាក់
๒๕៩ Weave	Wove	Woven ត្បាញ, ប្រឌិត
๒๖๐ Wed	Wed	Wed រ្យើបការ
๒๖๑ Weep	Wept	Wept យំ. ព្រះកន្សែង
ndn Win	Won	Won ឈ្នះ
២៦៣ Wind	Wound	Wound មួល (ឡាន ម៉ូតូ)
๒๖๔ Withdraw	Withdrew	Withdrawn ដកថយ
ยอะ Withhold	Withheld	Withheld មិនឱ្យព្រម, ដកយក
๒๖๖ Withstand	Withstood	Withstood ឥស៊ូនិង, ទ្រាំទ្រនិង
๒๖๓ Wring	Wrung	Wrung មូលពូត, គ្យេប
២៦៨ Write	Wrote	Written សិរិស៊េរិ

The End of the verbs

UNIT IV

ADJECTIVES

និយមន័យ: Adjective គុណនាមវិគុណស័ព្ទ គឺសំដៅទៅរកពាក្យដែលត្រូវគេប្រើសំរាប់ពិ ព័ណ៌នា វឺ ប្រាប់ពីរឿងរ៉ាវនុវលក្ខណៈសម្បត្តិរបស់នាមនុវក្នុងប្រយោគ។

Adjectives are divided into many kinds :

- 1. Adjectives of Quality or Descriptive Adjective.
- 2. Adjectives of Quanlity.
- 3. Adjectives of Number or Numberal Adjective,
- 4. Demonstrative Adjectives.
- 5. Interrogative Adjectives.
- 6. Distributive Adjectives.
- 7. Possessive Adjectives.
- 8. Present participle Adjectives.
- 9. Past Participle Adjectives.
- 10. Proper Adjectives
- 11. Emphasizing Adjectives
- 12. Exclamatory Adjectives
- 13. Relative Adjectives

1.1 Adjective of Quality or Descriptive Adjective.

និយមន័យ: Adjectives of Quality គឺជាប្រភេទនៃគុណស័ព្ទមួយអំបូរដែលមានតួនាទី សំរាប់ប្រាប់លក្ខណ:សម្បត្តិ, សណ្ឋាន, ពណ៌សម្បុរ នៃនាម តែប៉ុណ្ណោះ ។ គុណស័ព្ទបែប នេះមានចូចជា :

Practical, Lazy, Pretty, Strong, Weak, Sweat, Gentle, Slow, Fast, Big, Small, Long, Short, Thick, Large, Narrow, Huge, White, Black, Brown, Gray...etc. EX:

He doesn't like eating sour food.

She loves sweet and rocking songs.

My girl friend prefers to live in the fancy house.

The black dog is very boring.

Youth needs a fast car.

The little kids, most of the times, loves to eat sweet snaks.

Comparison of Adjectives (ការប្រៅបធៀប នៃគុណនាម)

នៅក្នុងភាសាអង់គ្លេស ក៏ដូចជាខេមរភាសាដែរ ពោលគឺ Adjective

ត្រូវបានគេបែងចែកជាបីទំរង់ (Three Form) ឬបីចំរិត (Three Degrees)

The three degrees of comparison are:

1 Positive Degree (បកតិគុណនាម) ប្រៅ្បធ្មៅបស្មើៗគ្នា

- 2 Comparative Degree (វិសេសគុណនាម):ប្រៅបធៀបប្លែកជាង
- 3 Superlative Degree (អតិវិសេសគុណនាម) ប្រៀវធៀបប្លែកបំផុត គុណនាមទាំងបីទំរង់នេះ គឺធ្វើការប្រៀបធៀបពីក៏វិតមួយទៅក៏វិតមួយ ដែលមានលក្ខណ: ដូចគ្នា ឬ បង្ហាញឱ្យឃើញពីភាពប្លែកជាង ឬប្លែកបំផុត ។

Positive Degree	Comparative Degree	Superlative Degree
Strong	Stronger	Strongest
Wad	Worse	Worst
Lazy	Lazier	Laziest
Good	Better	Best
Crazy	Crazier	Craziest
Long	Longer	Longest
Tall	Taller	Tallest
Small	Smaller	Smallest
Big	Bigger	Biggest
Black	Blacker	Blackest

ចំណាំ: ការបង្កើតទំរង់ Comparative នៃគុណនាមដែលទំរង់ទៀងទាត់ត្រូវបន្ថែម "er" ខាងចុង គុណនាមនេះ ឬបន្ថែម "Est" នៅខាងចុងនៃគុណនាម ដើប្បីបង្កើតឱ្យទៅជាទំរង superlative ។

📣 វិធីបង្កើតការប្រៀបធ្យើបទាំងបីនៃគុណស័ព្ទ

ការណីទី ១ គុណនាមទាំងឡាយដែលមានទំរង់ទៀងទាត់ដែលបញ្ចប់ដោយទូរអក្សរត្រឹម តែមួយព្យាង្គនៅខាងចុងត្រូវបន្ថែមទូរអក្សរនោះ មួយព្យាង្គបន្ថែមទៀតទើបបន្ថែមពាក្យ "Er" ឱ្យក្លាយជាទំរង់ Comparative Degree និងត្រូវបន្ថែមពាក្យ "Est" ដើម្បីបង្កើតទៅជាទំរង់

Superlative Degree 4

Positive Degree	Comparative Degree	Superlative Degree
Thin	Thinner	Thinnest
Green	Greener	Greenest
Red	Redder	Reddest
Hot	Hotter	Hottest
Low	Lower	Lowest

ការណីទី ២ គុណនាមទាំងឡាយដែលមានទំរង់ទ្យេងទាត់ដែលបញ្ចប់ដោយតួរអក្សរត្រឹមតែ "Y" តណ្ណោះ នៅខាងចុង ត្រូវលុប Y ចេញហើយបន្ថែម "Er" ដើម្បីបង្កើតទំរង់ Comparative ឬបន្ថែម "Est" ដើម្បីបង្កើតទំរង់ Superlative Degree ។

Positive Degree	Comparative Degree	Superlative Degree
Ugly	Uglier	Ugliest
Crazy	Crazier	Craziest
Lazy	Lazier	Laziest
Dirty	Dirtier	Dirtiest
Busy	Busier	Busiest
Easy	Easier	Easiest

ทัวนิที่ M Adjective of Irregular Form In Comparison.

និយមន័យ គុណនាមដែលមានទំរង់មិនទ្យេងទាត់ គឺជាគុណនាមមួយប្រភេទដែលតែងតែប្រែប្រូលពី ទំរង់ប្រក្រពី (Positive Degree) ទៅទំរង់វិសេសគុណនាម (Comparative Degree) និងក្នុង ទំរង់ អតិវិសេសគុណនាម (Superlative Degree) គុណនាមមិនឡេងទាត់មិនបន្ថែម "Er" ដើម្បី បង្កើត ទំរង់ Comparative ឬបន្ថែម "Est" ដើម្បីបង្កើតទំរង់ Superlative Degree ទេ ពោលគឺគូណស័ព្ទ មិនឡេងទាត់នេះតែងផ្លាស់ប្តូរ ទំរង់ដោយខ្លួនឯងជានិច្ច ។

Positive Degree	Comparative Degree	Superlative Degree
Good	Better	Best
Bad	Worse	Worst
Little	Less, Lesser	Least
Many	More	Most
Much	More	Most
Far	Further/ Farther	Farthest/Furthest
Old	Elder	Eldest
Late	Later/ Latter	Latest/Last

รัสมิวิธี G Comparative Superlative Degree

គុណនាមមួយចំនួនទៀតដេលមានព្យាង្គច្រើនជាងពីរឡើងទៅ គុណនាមអំបូរនេះតែងតែ បន្ថែម "More" ខាងមុខ ដើម្បីបង្កើតទំរង់ Comparative និងត្រូវបន្ថែមពាក្យ "The Most" ខាងមុខ ដើម្បីបង្កើត Superlative ។

Positive Degree	Comparative Degree	Superlative Degree
Expensive	More Expensive	The Most Expensive
Beautiful	More Beautiful	The Most Beautiful
Exciting	More Exciting	The Most Exciting
Charming	More Charming	The Most Charming
Wonderful	More Monderful	The Most Wonderful
Difficult	More Difficult	The Most Difficult
Splendid	More Splendid	The Most Splendid
Brilliant	More Brilliant	The Most Brilliant
Delicious	More Delicious	The Most Delicious

☑ រប្បើបប្រើប្រាស់ Positive Degree

ការណីទី ១ ចំពោះការប្រើប្រាស់ទំរង់បកតិគុណនាម (Positive Degree) អាចប្រើបានដោយដាក់ខាងមុខនាម ដើម្បីពិពណ៌នាន័យឱ្យនាម

EX: The nice book is on the table.

The charming girl is learning English.

The black dogs sleep near the gate.

ករណីទី២ ទំរង់បកតិតុណនាម Positive Degree នេះក៏ត្រូវបានគេប្រើដាក់ខាងក្រោយ

នាមផងដែរ ប៉ុន្តែត្រូវប្រើកិរិយាស័ព្ទ (Tobe) ដាក់មុខវា ។

EX: The book on the table is nice.

```
The girl that learning English is charming.
            The dogs sleep near the gate are black.
<u>ករណីទី</u> ៣ ទំរង់ Positive Degree ត្រូវបានគេប្រើដើម្បីធ្វើការប្រៀបធ្យើបក្នុងលក្ខណ:ស្នើៗគា្ន
       រវាងគុណភាពមួយ និងគុណភាពមួយឡេត តាមរូបមន្តយើងច្រើដូចនេះ As......As
       សំរាប់ប្រយោគស្រប Not As/ Not So ......As សំរាប់ប្រយោគបដិសេធ ។
       EX: The charming girl is as clever as him.
             He is as tall as his father.
            She is as white as a sheet.
            The black cow is not so good as my dog.
            They are not as stupid as you.
             We are not as sting as her.
☑ រប្បើបប្រើប្រាស់ Comparative Degree
ករណីទី ១ ទំរង់ Comparative Degree ត្រូវបានគេប្រើខាងក្រោយក៏រិយាស័ព Tobe
       ដើម្បីធ្វើការប្រេប្រធ្យេបពីនាមមួយ ទៅនាមមួយ ផ្សេងឡេត ។
Form: [S + Tobe + Comparative + Than + S + V / Obj]
       My book is nicer than your book (is).
       This man is taller than that one (is).
            He is stronger than I am (me).
             My wife is better than the old lady.
ការលឺទី ២ ទំរង់ Comparative Degree ត្រូវបានគេប្រើចំពោះការ កើនឡើងៗ ឬ ការថយចុះៗ
       ដែលភ្ជាប់ដោយពាក្យ (An).
       Form: [S + V + Adj + Er + Than + And + Adj + Er]
            He is worse and worse every day.
            My girlfriend is younger and younger.
             You are better and better for English.
            The weather is getting hotter and hotter, now.
            He becomes less and less interested.
ករណីទី ៣ ទំរង់ Comparative Degree ត្រូវបានគេប្រើបញ្ជាក់នូវការកើនឡើងស្របគ្នា ដោយភ្ជាប់និងពាក្យ
       The តាមរូបមន្តខាងក្រោម ។
       Form: [ The Comparative ..... The + Comparative]
       EX: Do you want a new car?
             Yes, the newer the better.
            How much do you need.
            The less the better or
            The bigger the better or
            The more the worse.
ករណីទី ៤ ទំរង់ Comparative ត្រូវបានគេប្រើជាមួយពាក្យទាំងឡាយណាដែលមានពីរ
       ព្យាង្គប្តូច្រើនជាងពីរឡើងទៅ ។
       Form: [S + ......More + Comparative + Than +.....]
       EX: She is more charming than the teacher.
```

He is more fabulous than the old leader.

My bike is more expensive than yours.

This food is more delicious than that one.

☑ រប្បើបម្រើប្រាស់ Superlative Degree.

ករណីទី ១ Superlative Degree ត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់ចង្អល់បង្ហាញអំពីក៏វិតខ្ពស់បំផុត ចំពោះព្យាង្គគឺចាប់ពីច្រើនជាងពីរ សំរាប់ចំនួនវត្ថុ ប្ញមនុស្សមានច្រើនជាងពីរពោលគឺ យ៉ាងហោចណាស់គឺចាប់ពីរបីទៀងទៅ :

[S + Tobe + The Most Phone + Adj +In/Of ..]

EX: This is the best phone in the world.

He is the kindest man in the family.

It was the most worrying day that I had ever spent.

ករណីទី ២ ទំរង់ Superlative degree ត្រូវបានគេប្រើដោយមិនមានពាក្យ The នៅពីមិខ អត្ថន័យគឺស្មើគ្នានិង

Very 1

Form: $[S + Tobe + Most + Adj \dots]$

EX: You are most clever, my honey.

He is most poor in the world.

2 Adjective of Quantity ក្ពុណសព័្តបរិមាណ

និយមន័យ Adjective of Quantity គឺជាគុណស័ព្ទមានតួរនាទីសំរាប់ញ្ជាក់ នូវបរិមាណចំណុះនៃនាម តែគ្មានតួរនាទីសំរាប់ រាប់ចំនួនរបស់នាមទេ ដូច្នេះមានន័យថា អំបូរនាមដែលអាចប្រើបាននោះ គឺ ពពូកនាមរាប់មិនបាន ពេលសួរតែងចាប់យកពាក្យ How much......? Adjective of Quantity មានចូចជាពាក្យ Some, Any, A little, Enough, Much, No, Sufficient ជាដើម ។

EX: Mr. chakaval bought some rice fore the whole year round.

Mr. Neak drinks much beer today.

We get a little rain this year.

She has got sufficient intelligence.

I have no idea for this.

You have no sense.

He showed much patience.

3. Adjective of Number or Numberal Adjective វិចន:គុណនាម វិ វិចន:គុណស័ព្ទ

និយមន័យ: Adjective of Number គឺជាអំបូរនៃគុណនាមមួយប្រភេទប្រើសំរាប់បង្ហាញ

អំពីចំនួននៃនាម រឹសម្រាប់ រាប់ចំនួន,លេខរឿង កំនត់ចំនួននៃនាម មានដូចពាក្យថា A, The, An, One, Two, Three, Four, Twin, Single, Double, First, Second, Many, Several, Plenty Of, A Couple, Triple, A Few, Few, Son Any, etc.

Numberal Adjective ចែកជាបីប្រភេទគឺ

- 1 Definite Numberal Adjective.
- 2 Indefinite Numberal Adjective.
- 3 Distributive Adjective.

- 1.1Definite Numberal Adjective គឺជាគុណនាមម្យ៉ាងប្រើបង្ហាញអំពីចំនួនពិតប្រាកដ់ ដោយលោកអ្នកប្រាជ្ញចែកចេញជាពីរគឺ :
 - 1.Cardinal Number គឺចំនួនដែលត្រូវរាប់ធម្មតា One, Two, Three,etc
 - 2. Ordinal Number គឺចំនួនត្រូវបានគេរាប់ជាលំដាប់ ដូចជា First, Second, Third,...ect
- 2. Indefinite Numberal Adjective គឺជាអំបូរៃ នគុណនាមម្យ៉ាងដែលតែងតែមិនបង្ហាញ ចំនួនពិតប្រាកដទេដូចជាពាក្យថា All, No, Many, Few, Some, Any, Certain, Several,Sundry,

EX: All man must die.

I have no problem in my heart.

She has got many children.

There are several days left.

/ Demonstrative Adjective (និទស្សក្ណានាម)

និយមន័យ: Demonstrative Adjectives គឺជាអំបូរ នៃគុណនាមមួយប្រភេទសំរាប់ចង្អល់ ទៅលើនាមដូចជាពាក្យថា: This, That, Those, These ហើយនាមទាំងនោះត្រូវដាក់ ពីមុខ នាមជាដរាប ចំពោះ This and That ប្រើជាមួយនាមឯកវិចនៈ(Singular noun) រីឯ Those and These ប្រើជាមួយនាមពហុវិចនៈ (Plural Noun) ចំពោះពាក្យទាំង 4 ដើរតួរបានច្រើន យ៉ាងណាស់ ដូច្នេះចំបាច់ត្រូវសំគាល់អំពីលក្ខណៈនីមួយៗ នៃពាក្យនាមសំរាប់បញ្ចាំង ឱ្យឃើញ ពី គូណភាពរបស់នាមនោះៗ

EX: This man is most kind for my family.

That dog is lazy.

These books are so expensive.

Those people are accused of being drunk.

I think that this car is out of order.

5/ Interrogative Adjectives (ប៉ុច្ឆែនះកុំណនាម)

និយមន័យ: Interrogative Adjectives គឺជាគុណស័ព្ទមួយប្រភេទដែលត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់ សូរនូវសំនួរ មានដូចជាពាក្យថា Which, What, Whose,

សំ**គាល់ៈ** ពាក្យទាំងនេះមានការងារ ច្រើនយ៉ាងណាស់ដែលពួកគេធ្វើបាន ដូច្នេះក្នុងករណី ជា គុណនាមនោះ ពោលគឺពួកគេតែងឈរនៅមុខនាម តែងផ្ដើមសួរនូវសំនួរ (Interrogative Sentense)

EX:

What book do you like to read?

Whose son is he?

```
Whose daughter is she?
      Which way can we go now?
      Which car is yours?
      What language do you like?
 Interrogative Adjective មានការងារប៊ុំគ
 1. Subject of Verb
 Form [ What/ Which/ Whose + N + v ......? ]
 EX:
      What book is on the table?
      Whose daughter makes me crazy?
      Which car attract her to buy?
 2. Object of Verb
 Form: [What/Which/Whose + N + Auxiliary + S + V..?]
 EX:
      What kind of girl do you like?
      Which girl does he get married?
      Whose chair did they buy?
 3. Object of Preposition.
 Form: [What/Which/Whose/ + N + Auxiliary verb + S + V + Preposition ?]
 EX:
      What car do you look for?
      Which book do you talk about?
      Whose family does he think of?
Distributive Adjectives គឺជាគុណនាមមួយអំបូរដែលនិយាយអំពំចំនួនមួយៗនៃនាម
  មានដូចពាក្យថា Each, Every, Either, Neither Sundry.
 EX:
      Each boy must pay money for the transport.
      Every day, we care of money.
      On either side is a narrow lone.
```

7/ Possessive Adjective (គុណនាមកម្មសិទ្ធិ រឺ សាមីគុណនាម)

Neither accusation is true.

និយមន័យ: Possessive Adjective គឺជាប្រភេទនៃគុណនាមម្យ៉ាងដែលមានតួរនាទី សំរាប់ កំនត់នូវភាពជាសាមីនៃនាម ក្នុងប្រយោធ ។ Possessive Adjective ទាំងនេះភាគច្រើនត្រូវ បានគេបង្កើតចេញពី personal pronouns ដូចពាក្យថា My, Your, His, Her, Its, Our, Their ចំពោះទីតាំងវិញត្រូវបានគេប្រើដាក់ពីមុខនាមជាដរាប ។

ចំណាំ: អំបូរគុណស័ព្ទទាំងនេះមិនអាចប្រើដោយគ្មាននាមបានទេ

EX: Mr. Yon has got his home painted.

Mr. Veryo always takes care of his heath.

My watch is getting five minutes slow.

Her feeling shows a little bit annoyed.

His car is broken down.

ស្លីកឈើ

I love my girl friend so much.

Your trousers need to be mended.

8/ Present Participle Adjectives (កុណនាមផ្ទុំដោយ Ing ខាងចុង)

និយមន័យៈ Present Participle Adjective គឺជាប្រភេទនៃគុណម្យ៉ាង ដែលមានក៏រិយាស័ព្ទ

ភ្ជាប់ដោយ Ing

EX: You have a tiring day, Today.

We dislike the boring picture.

They have ever seen the horrifying sense.

9/ Past Participle Adjectives គុណស័ព្ទផ្សំនិងក៏វិយាខ្ទង់ទី៣

និយមន័យ: Past Participle Adjectives គឺជាគុណនាមមួយប្រភេទដែលមាន លក្ខណៈប្លែក ពីគេ ព្រោះអីគុណនាមនេះមានសេចក្តីប្រែជា Passive វិញនិងកើត ចេញពីក៏វិយា ស័ព្ទខ្ទង់ទី៣

EX: The married man is allowed to stay in the house.

No one understands about my broken heart.

The clients like your broken English.

Please, give me the fried potatoes.

The cat can't eat the boiled cabbage.

10/ Proper Adjectives (អសាធាកុណនាម)

និយមន័យ: Proper Adjectives គឺជាគុណស័ព្ទមួយប្រភេទដែលកើតចេញពី ប្រភពធំរបស់

Proper Noun ដែលសំដៅទៅដល់ភាសា, ជាតិសាសន៍ ជួចជា French, English, Indian,

Combodian, Thai, Chiness, ជាដើមប៉ុន្តែការងាជាគុណនាមនោះគឺពេលពួកវាឈរនៅពី

មុខនាម ។

EX: My father likes to work with the chiness man.

He killed many, many Cambodian People.

She bought French wines for her wedding.

In pup street, there are many tourists drinking Indian coffee.

English people speak English well.

11/ Emphasizing Adjectives (កុណនាមសង្កត់)

និយមន័យ: Emphasizing Adjectives គឺជាគុណនាមមួយបែបច្រើសំរាប់បញ្ជាក់ ន័យឱ្យវិតតែ

ច្បាស់ទៅលើនាមដូចពាក្យថា Very, Own, Onlyetc

EX: You are the very man that I want to see.

She is a very girl who is charming.

Don't take care about my own health.

They defend their own money.

He is the very robber who stole my own girl friend.

You are the only girl who I love.

```
12/ Exclamatory Adjectives.
```

និយមន័យ: Exclamatory Adjectives គឺគុណនាមមួយប្រភេទដែលតែងត្រូវបានគេ ប្រើដើម្បី បញ្ជាក់ពីការភ្ញាក់ផ្អើល ដូចពាក្យថា What, ភាគច្រើនមិនប្រើ Finite Verb ទេ ពេលខ្លះ ត្រូវបានគេប្រើ តែមិនញាក់ញាប់ទេ

Form [What + A/ An + N...!] EX: What a pity!

What a silly thing to do! What a nice garden!

What a day!

What a beautiful girl!

Form [What + a/an + N + S + V.]

EX:

What a great son, you have! What an ugly man, he is!

What a lucky cat, it is!

13/ Relative Adjectives

និយមន័យ: Relative Adjectives គឺជាអំបូរនៃគុណនាមដែលត្រូវបានគេប្រើដោយចាប់យកពាក្យ

What, Which, Whose, Whatever, Whichever ជាដើមដាក់មុខនាម ។

EX:

You can drink whichever beer you prefer.

They come and take whatever books they need

Tell me whose car parks here?

14/ Compound Adjectives លំមាល់នាម

និយមន័យ: Compound Adjectives គឺជាប្រភេទនៃគុណនាមមួយប្រភេទដែលត្រូវបានផ្សំធាតុ រវាងនាម និង ក៏រិយា និង នាមជាដើមមានពីរប្រភេទ គឺ :

1.Compound Adjective បង្កើតជាមួយក៏វិយាស័ព្ទខ្ទង់ទី ៣

EX:

English-spoken-countries.

A tree-lined-road

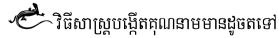
2. Compound Adjective បង្កើតជាមួយពាក្យ "Ing"

EX:

A good-looking-girl.

A fast-growing-rice.

A top-ranking-police.



กัรณีទី9 Noun + Y => Adjective

Sun + Y => Sunny

```
Wind
       + Y => Windy
Rain
        + Y \Rightarrow Rainy
Snow + Y => Snowy
Wealth + Y => Wealthy
Ease
       + Y \Rightarrow Easy
Noise + Y => Noisy
Mess
       + Y => Messy
ករណីទី២ Noun + Ful => Adjective
        + Ful => Hopeful
Hope
Use
        + Ful => Useful
Fear
       + Ful => Fearful
Care
       + Ful => Careful
Wonder + Ful =>Wonderful
Color + Ful +> Colorful
       + Ful => Painful
Beauty + Ful => Beautiful
ករណីទី ៣ Noun + Less => Adjective
EX:
       Use + Less => Useless
       Hope + Less => Hopeless
       Job + Less => jobless
       Father + Less => fatherless
       Mother + Less => motherless
       Home +Less =>homeless
       Care + Less => careless
ករណីទី ៤ Noun + ous => Adjective
EX:
       danger + ous => dangerous
       Fame + ous => famous
       Marvel + ous => marvelous
       Industry + ous => industrious
ករណីទី ៥ Noun + al => Adjective
EX:
       nature + al => natural
       Culture + al => cultural
       Nation +al => national
ករណីទី ៦ Noun + Ic => Adjective
       Artist + Ic => Artistic
EX:
       Photograph + Ic => Photographic
ករណីទី ៧ គុណនាមត្រូវបានបង្កើតចេញពី Verb ដែលបញ្ចប់ដោយ "Ive"
EX:
        Act+ Ive=> Active
       Attractive + Ive => Attractive
       Talk + Ive => Talkative
       Describe + Ive => Describtive
ករណីទី ៨ គុណនាមត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតពីក៏វិយាស័ព្ទ ដោយបន្ថែមពាក្យ "Able"
```

EX: Aat + Able =>Aatable
Drink + Able => Drinkable
Value + Able => Valulable
Believe + Able => Belivable

TIME & Noun + Ly => Adjective

EX: Brother + $Ly \Rightarrow$ Brotherly

Friend + Ly => Friendly
Day + Ly => Daily
Month + Ly => Monthly
Man + Ly => Manly

Mother + Ly => Motherly

ករណីទី 90 Noun + Ish => Adjective

EX: Child + Ish=>Childish Fool + Ish => Foolish

ករណីទី ១១ Adjective ត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតចេញពីនាមដោយមានអក្សរ Ce នៅខាងចុង

ត្រូវផ្លាស់ចូលទៅជា Nt

EX: $(N) \Rightarrow (Adj)$

Importance => Important Presence => Present

Assistance => Assistant

Patience=> Patient

Excellence => Excellent Difference => Different

រប្បើបែបង្កើត Compound Adjective

ករណីទី ១ វាត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតជាមួយទំរង Past Participle

EX: A horse- drown – card

English – spoken- country

A tree-tined-road

ករណីទី ២ វាត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតចេញពី ទំរង់ Present Participle

EX: A top-ranking-person

A slow – growing – economic

A good-looking-girl

ករណីទី ៣ វាត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតចេញពី Noun ដោយបន្ថែមពាក្យ ED

EX: Cross – eyed

Hard - hearted

One - eyed

Open - handed

Open – minded

ករណីទី 4 វាត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតឡើងសំរាប់អាយិកាល

EX: A five – year- old building

A twenty – year old man

A four – month old baby

ករណីទី ៥ វាត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតសំរាប់ក្រឡាផ្ទៃ ឬ ទំហំ

EX: A two – square – kilometer farm

A four – hectare plan tation

A one- litre bottle

A five- hectare farm

ករណីទី ៦ វាត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតសំរាប់កំឡុងពេល

EX: A four-hour meeting

A Two-day conference

A-ten day visit.

A – five- month tour

ករណីទី ៧ វាត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់វាស់ប្រវែង

EX: A ten - meter - long table

A hundred – meter – long bridge

A three - meter road

ករណីទី ៨ វាត្រូវបានគេច្រើសំរាប់ តំលៃ

EX: A two -dollar book

A fifty dollar bike

A ten-dollar dictionary.

ករណីទី ៩ វាត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់ពេលវា

EX: A ten – minute match

A twenty – hour show.

A thirty – minute meeting

ករណីទី ១០ វាត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់កំពស់

EX: A five – meter – tall house

A two – meter – tall boy

A hundred – meter – tall tree'

ករណីទី ១១ វាត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតឡើងដោយយកពាក្យ "Well, Badly, Self, Under "

ដាក់នៅពីមុខពាក្យស្ថិតក្នុងទំរង; Past Participle

EX: Well – paid

Well - behaved

Well- educated

Badly-behaved

Badly - educated

Badly - paid

Under- cooked

Under – developed

Under-singed

Under- done

Under- sized

ករណីទី ១២ វាត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតឡើងដោយយកពាក្យ Sick, Proof ប្រើនៅក្រោយពាក្យផ្សេងទៀត

EX: Sea- sick Home-sick Car – sick Water- proof

Base and strong Adjective

Base Adjective	Strong Adjective
Tired	Exhausted
Big	Enormous
Good	Perfect
Good	Marvelous
Good	Great
Good	Wonderful
Good	Fantastic
Good	Super
Tasty	Delicious
Bad	Awful/horrible
Attractive	Beautiful
Pretty	Gorgeous
Hungry	Starving
Angry	Furious
Surprised	Amassed
Funny	Hilarious
Clever	Brilliant

ចំណាំ : ចំពោះ Base Adjective គឺជាទំរង់នៃគុណនាមដែល មានលក្ខណខ្សោយ ពោលគឺយើង អាចប្រើពាក្យ Very, So, Quite, etc តែចំពោះ Strong Adjective វិញនោះគឺជាបែប នៃគុណ នាមដែលមានលក្ខណខ្លាំងស្រាប់ ពោលគឺមិនអាចប្រើពាក្យដូច Base Adjective ទេ ដូច្នេះយើង ប្រើពាក្យ Extremely, Absolutely ជំនួសវិញ ។

EX: You are a very good man
We are very tired, today
Angkor Wat is absolutely fantastic
My father is extremely crucial
This soup tasts absolutely delicious

👀 លំអិតទីតាំងនៃគុណនាមដែលមានការប្រៅបធៀបស្ទើរប្លែកជាង ប្លែកបំផុត

Positive Degree ក៏រិតស្នើ

ករណីទី 1 [S + Verb + As + Adj + As]

EX: We are as poor as her.

She is as white as him.

My family is as good as yours.

ករណីទី 2 [
$$s + verb + not + as/so + adj + as$$
]

EX: We are not so stingy as him.

They are not as old as me.

He is not as black as the coal/

EX: You are as fast as Mr. Han Sign.

Nirdey comes as early as Mr. Panlok.

You speak as well as my teacher.

ករណីទី ៤ យើងប្រៅបធៀបពីចំនួនច្រើនដែលមានលក្ខណស្មើគ្នា

EX: She needed as many books as you need.

He can write as many words as she can.

We have as many cows as her family has.

EX: They don't take as many plates as you do.

We don't want so many cars as he does.

It couldn't steal as many bikes as he could.

ករណីទី 6 [
$$S + V + As Much + N + As......$$
]

EX: You drink as much beer as he does.

She have as much wine as you have.

I need as much water as they do.

EX: My salary is the same as yours.

She is the same girl as we are.

The boys are the same age as you are.

You are different from me.

Your family is different from nine.

She is different from my wife.

កំរណីទី
$$8 [S + V + As + Much/ Many/ Little/ Few + N + As]$$

EX: My teacher has as few student as I have.

He got as little news as I did.

She has as much many as I have.

He killed as many people as his friend did.

🚧 Comparative Degree ក៏វិតប្លែកជាង

$$1 \text{ [} S+V \left\{ \begin{array}{l} Adjective+er\\ More+adj\\ Less+Adj \end{array} \right\} + Than+\ldots\ldots]$$

EX: My mother is better than you.

Your car is more expensive than mine.

They are less interesting than us.

```
2 [S+V+Far/Much+Adj+Er+Than...]
EX:
         You are far prettier than my students.
         They are much happier than me.
        He is much better than her.
        The girl is much cleverer than the black man.
        The black dog is worse than the lazy eat.
3 [S + V + Far/Much + More/Less + Adj + Than + ...]
EX:
        Nirdey is far more beautiful than julia.
        My car is much more expensive than yours
        Mr. Veayo's house is much more modern than Dany's.
         You are far less important than me.
4 [S + V + \begin{cases} Adj + Er + And + Adj + Er \\ Less and less \\ More and more \end{cases} + \dots]
EX:
        My son is more and more handsome.
        He is less and less interested.
        She is worse and worse for my family.
        I am better and better than him.
        His daughter is prettier and prettier.
        I love you more and more.
         Your profsit is less and less from now on
5 [ The + Comparative Adj + S + V + The + Comparative Adj + S + V +.....]
EX:
        The richer I am, the poorer my sister is.
        The hotter the weather is, the more miserable I felt.
        The fatter you are, the more boring I am.
             more
             Fewer + N + Than + \dots
6 [ S +V +
             Less
EX:
        I have fewer children than my friend is.
        She is less charming than the old lady.
        February has fewer days than the other months.
ករណីទី 6 Double Comparatives
        [S+Tobe + Getting + Comparative + And Comparative]
EX:
        The weather is getting hotter and hotter.
         You are getting lazier and lazier.
        She is getting prettier and prettier.
ករណីទី 7 ក្នុង Double Comparative
        [S + The + Comparative +S +V+ The + Comparative + S + V +....]
EX:
        The lazier you are, the more miserable you get.
        The happier I am, The better I am.
        The rudder your son is, the more dangerous he is.
```

The prettier she is, the more snobbish she is.

ករណីទី 8 ក្នុង Double Comparative

 $[\dot{S} + Comparative +, + The + Comparative]$

EX:

The stronger, the better.

The more talkative, the more hateful.

The nastier, the more interesting.

The End of Adjective

UNIT V

PRONOUNS

និយមន័យ: Pronouns គឺជាសព្វនាម ជាពាក្យដែលត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់ជំនួសឱ្យនាម មានមនុស្ស សត្វ និងវត្ថុជាដើម ដើម្បីជៀសវាងនូវភាពច្រំដេលៗនៃពាក្យដែលត្រូវបាន គេប្រើនោះ ។ នៅក្នុងភាសាអង់គ្លេស Pronouns មានច្រើនប្រភេទ ដូចខាងក្រោម

- 1 Personal Pronouns
- **2 Impersonal Pronouns**
- 3 Reflexive Pronouns
- **4 Emphasizing Pronouns**
- **5 Irregular or Indefinite Pronouns**
- **6 Demonstrative Pronouns**
- 7 Possessive Pronouns
- **8 Relative Pronouns**
- 9 Interrogative Pronouns
- 10 Distributive Pronouns

1.1 Personal Pronouns ត្រូវបានគេបែងចែកជាពីរគឺ

- 1 Subject Pronouns 📆 I, We, They, You, He, She, It.
- 2 Object Pronouns 📆 Me, Us, You, Them, Him, Her, It.
- * Subject Pronouns ត្រូវបានគេបែងចែកជាពីរក្នុងការប្រើប្រាស់គឺ :
- ១ វាត្រូវបានគេប្រើធ្វើជាប្រធានរបស់ក៏វិយាស័ព្ទ

EX: I love my family so much.

We like to listen VOA in English every day.

You can't do that exactly. He faces with a big problem. They will mot control us.

២ វាត្រូវបានគេប្រើដើម្បីផ្តល់នូវការសង្កត់សេចក្តីលើនាម ឬសព្វនាម ដែលស្ថិត នៅបន្ទាប់ ។

ស្លីកឈើ

EX: It was you who turned on the radio.

It is he who sleeps in the bed.

It is the silly fish that is caught twice with the same bait.

* Objective pronouns ត្រូវបានគេបែងចែកជា ៣ គឺ:

១ វាត្រូវបានគេប្រើដើម្បីទទួលរងនូវអំពើលើបទប្រធាន

EX: They saw me last night.

She killed him easily.

They helped me a lot.

I love her only one in the world. I need her only one all my life.

២ វាត្រូវបានគេប្រើធ្វើជាកម្មបទរបស់អាយតនិបាត

EX: I think of you every day.

You must take care of them.

I always dream of you, my dear.

៣ វាត្រូវបានគេច្រើដើម្បីឱ្យឈរពីមុខ Infinitive

EX: I ask her to get married in 2012.

She wants me to have a steady job first.

They told us to try our best to be a good teachers.

2 Impersonal Pronouns (សព្វនាមមិនមែនជាមនុស្ស)

និយមន័យ: Impersonal Pronouns គឺសព្វនាមមួយអំបូរដែលត្រុវបានគេប្រើជំនួសឱ្យ នាមដែលមិនមែនជាមនុស្ស ។ សព្វនាមនេះមានពាក្យថា"It"

ករណីទី១ វាត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់សត្វនិងវត្ថុដេលយើងមិនស្គាល់ភេទរបស់វា.

EX: It is very good to talk about my girlfriend.

It's absolutely super to live in the modern City.

ករណីទី ២ វាត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់កូនង៉ែត ឬ ក្មែងតូចៗដែលយើងអស់ស្គាល់ភេទ

EX: Her new baby was named by Mr. Neak, It's called Bora.

The baby is very tiny, it only weighs 1 kilos.

It is a nice child in my family.

ករណីទី ៣ វាត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់ការនិយាយតាមប្រព័ន្ធទូរស័ព្ទ

EX: Who is that ? It's me, Tan Segn.

Who is it? It's peter.

Who is it? It's me, Tom

ករណីទី ៤ វាត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់ ពេលវេលា (Time) ឬ កាលបរិច្ឆេត (Date)

EX: What time is it? It is 3 o'clock.

What time is it? It is 3:30

What's the date? It is the third of march.

What's the day today? It is sunday.

ករណីទី ៥ វ៉ាត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់ចំង៉ាយ (distance)

EX: How long does it take to get their? It depends on how you go.

How far is it from here to Bonteay Meanchey? It is 100 Kilometers or so.

ករណីទី ៦ វាត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់អាកាសធាតុ (Weather) ជំនោ (Tide) ឬសីតុណ្ហភាព

EX: It is very cold in winter.

It is so hot

It is raining.

It is snowing so much.

It was high tide, yesterday.

It is low tide, today.

It is frosty.

ករណីទី ៧ វាត្រូវបានគេប្រើធ្វើជាបទប្រធាន មិនច្បាស់លាស់ (Indefinite Subject)

នៃក៏រិយាស័ព្ទមិនមែនសនុស្ស (Impersonal Verb)

EX: It rains

It snows

It thunders

It appears

ទីខំពោះក៏វិយាស័ព្ទដែលច្រើក្រោយ If គេហៅថា Impersonal Verb).

ករណីទី ៨ It ត្រូវាបានគេប្រើជាបទប្រធានបណ្ណោះអាសន្នដែលវាឈរនៅមុខក៏រិយាស័ព្ទ (Tobe) ពេលដែលបទប្រធានពិតប្រាកដឈរពីក្រោយ :

EX: It is easy to find fault = To find fault is easy.

It is doubtful if he will go back.

It is certain that you are wrong.

It is real that I want to get married.

ករណីទី ៩ វាត្រូវបានគេច្រើតំណាងឱ្យសមូហនាម (Collective Nouns) វាប្រាកដជា ស្ថិតក្នុងតំរង់ឯកចន បើសិន Collective Noun ត្រូវបានគេចាត់ទុកជាក្រុមមួយនោះ

EX: After a few minutes, the jury gave its verdict.

The crew mutinied and murdered its officers.

The fleet will reach its destination within a year.

3/ Reflexive Pronouns សព្វនាមឆ្លុះបញ្ចាំង

និយមន័យ: Reflexive Pronoun គឺជាសព្វនាមមួយអំបូរដែលត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់ សកម្មភាពទាំងឡាយណា ដែលត្រូវបានធ្វើដោយត្រូវធាន តែសកម្មភាពនោះៗ បែរត្រឡប់ (Turn back or Reflect) ជះលើប្រធានវិញ ។

```
ចំណាំ: នៅពេលដែលពាក្យ (Self ) ត្រូវបានគេបន្ថែមទៅលើពាក្យ My, Your, Him, Her, It,
and Selves ត្រូវបានគេបន្ថែមទៅលើពាក្យ Our, Your, Them តាមធម្មតាលោក
អ្នកប្រាជ្ញហៅរ៉ាថា Compound Personal Pronoun.
ករណីទី ១ ភាគច្រើននៃ Reflexive Pronoun ប្រធាន និង កមបទគឺរបស់តែមយ
Form: [S + TV + Compound Personal Pronoun]
       I hurt myself.
```

EX:

You will hurt yourself.

She hurts herself.

We hurt ourself.

They hurt themselves.

You hurt yourself.

ករណីទី ២ វាត្រូវបានគេប្រើជាកម្មបទរបស់អាយតនិបាត (Preposition)

Form : [S + IT + Preposition + Compound Personal Pronoun]

EX: We must take care of ourself.

> She thinks of herself. I talked to myself.

They know what to do with themselves.

Do you look after yourself?

4/ Emphasizing Pronouns / Emphatic Pronouns

និយមន័យ: Emphasizing Pronouns គឺជាប្រភេទនៃទងើរវិ៣ ពោលគឺលទ

ផលនៃទង្វេរនោះរមែងទៅកាន់បុគ្គល់ដទៃផ្សេងឡេត ។

ករណីទី ១ វាត្រូវបានគេប្រើសង្គត់សេចក្តីទៅលើប្រធានឱ្យវិតតែច្បាស់ទៅ១ .

Form: [S + Compound Personal Pronoun + TV + Obj]

EX: She herself filed a divorce.

I myself keep a promises.

You yourself did the silly thin on sunday.

ករណីទី ២ វាត្រូវបានគេប្រើធ្វើជាបទបំពេញឱ្យកម្មបទ

Form : [S + TV + Obj + Compound Personal Pronoun]

EX: I will do that myself.

You must settle up the problems yourself.

We learn English ourselves.

ករណីទី ៣ វាត្រូវបានគេប្រើធ្វើជាកម្មបទរបស់ពាក្យ By .

Form : [S + V + Obj + By + Compound Personal Pronoun]

EX: He talked back to her by himself.

She makes a short stop by herself.

They stop smoking cigarette by themselves.

ចំណាំ: ពាក្យ self ពេលខ្លះត្រូវបានគេប្រើជា Noun

EX: I care of or nothing but self.

She thinks much of self.

To thire own self be rue.

To your own self be true.

5/ Emphasizing Pronouns

និយមន័យ: Emphasizing Pronouns សព្វនាមមិនជាក់លាក់គឺអំបូរនៃសព្វ នាមដែលត្រូវបានគេប្រើជំនួសឱ្យនាមទាងឡាយណាដែលមានលក្ខណ:មិនពិតប្រាកដ គឺត្រូវបានគេនិយាយទៅកាន់មនុស្ស ឬ វត្ថុទាំងឡាយណាដែលទូទៅមិនមែន ចោះចំពោះទេ

ដូចពាក្យថា one, ones-none= not one, all some. Any, few, a lot. Many, much, others, somebody, anybody. Every body, every one, No body, No one, something, anything, every thingetc'

EX: Your car is green but the one I have is white.

They have nice cars but the ones we have are old.

None but fool have ever believed it.

All were drowned.

Some are born great.

Some say he is sharper.

Some body has stolen my watch.

Nobody was there to rescue the child.

Few escaped unhurt.

We did not see any of them.

Do good to others.

Did you ask any body to come?

What is every body's business is nobody's business.

His words are in every one's mouth.

I think a lot, now.

6/ Demonstrative Pronouns / Definite Pronoun សព្វនាមចង្អល់បង្ហាញ

និយមន័យ: Demonstrative Pronouns គឺសំដៅដល់ស័ព្ទទាំងឡាយណាដែលត្រូវបានគេ ប្រើសំរាប់ចង្អល់បង្ហាញនាមក្នុងប្រយោគ ប៉ុន្តែគ្រប់ករណីដែលពួកវាមាន ឋានៈជាសព្វមាននោះ ពោលគឺពេលពួកគេឈរនៅមុខក៏រិយាស័ព្ទ to be ជាដរាប ។

EX: Then is my son.

These are my sons.

That is his wife.

Those are his wives.

7/ Possessive pronouns សព្ទនាមសាមី

និយមន័យ: សាមីសព្វនាមគឺជាអំបូរនៃសព្វនាមដែលត្រូវបានគេច្រើសំរាប់បញ្ជាក់ពីកម្ម សិទ្ធិ ឬ ភាពជាសមីលើរបស់សព្វសរពើរ ពាក្យទាំនោះគឺ : Mine- Yours, Ours, Theirs His, Hers, Its Yours, ពាក្យទាំងនេះភាគច្រើនត្រូវបានគេច្រើ នៅក្រោយក៏វិយាស័ព្ទ ToBe ឬ នៅក្រោយ Preposition "Of".

EX: The roses in his garden are so beautiful but ours are not so good this year.

You are using my pen, where is yours?

This is their car = the car is theirs.

You tell us your impression but now we will tell ours.

He is my friend= she is a sister of his.

Here is the new car of mine.

This mice book is hers.

This is her nice book=this is the nice book of hers.

8/ Relative Pronouns or Conjunctive Pronoun.

និយមន័យ: Relative Pronouns គឺជាប្រភេទនៃសព្វនាមមួយប្រភេទដែលត្រូវបាន គេប្រើសំ

រាប់ភ្ជាប់ប្រយោគមួយ ទៅប្រយោគមួយ មានដូចពាក្យថា : Who, Whom. Whose. Which.

That, What.

EX: He is a man who saved my life.

When she sees what you've done she'll be angry.

He is a boy whose father was killed.

The man that she loves is kind.

This is a book which I want.

The book which I want is on the table.

ចំណាំ: Who ទាំងឯកវិចនៈ ទាំងពហុវិចនៈ វាដើរតួរសំរាប់ បទប្រធាន

Whose ទាំងឯកវិចនៈ ទាំងពហុវិចនៈវាដើរតួរសំរាច់កម្មសិទ្ធិ

Whom ទាំងឯកវិចនៈ ទាំងពហុវិចនៈ វាដើរតួរសំរាប់កម្មបទ

ប៉ុន្តែ ក្នុងភាសាអង់គ្លេសក្រៅផ្លូវការ ពេលខ្លះអ្នកនិយាយទាំឡាយតែងលើកយកពាក្យ who

មកប្រើជំនួស Whom វិញ ។

EX: This is a boy who I spoke to

That is a man who I saw

ប្រយោគទាំនេះគួរតែនិយាយយ៉ាងនេះទើបត្រឹមត្រូវ

EX: This is a boy who I spoke to or

This is a boy to whom I spoke

That is a man whom I saw

ប៉ុន្តែបើចង់ប្រើ who គួរតែនិយាយយ៉ាងនេះវិញ

EX: That is a man who spoke to me

This is a boy who wrote to her

She is a girl who killed my love

₩ក្បួនខ្លះនិយាយយ៉ាងនេះ

	បទប្រធាន	កម្មបទ	កម្មសិទ្ធិ
សំរាប់មនុស្ស	Who	Whom/Who	Whose
សំរាប់វិត្ថុ	Which	Which	Whose/ Of Which
·	That	That	
	What	What	

ေសំណាំ ពាក្យ What គឺខុសប្លែកពី Which ពីព្រោះ What មិននិយាយសំដៅត្រឡប់ទៅ កាន់រឿងផ្សេង១ទេ ឯរី which គឺត្រូវបានគេនិយាយទៅកាន់ពាក្យ ឬ ក្រុមនៃពាក្យស្ថិតគ្នុង ប្រយោគដែលអមដោយបរិវាស័ព្ទ ម្យ៉ាង ពាក្យ what ក្នុងការងារជា Relative Pronoun ត្រូវបានគេប្រែថា "រឿងរ៉ាវទាំងឡាយដែល" តែពេលខ្លះវាអាចដើរតួរជាកម្មបទផងដែរ តាមគំរួខាងលើស្រាប់

EX: What we saw astonished us= the things that we saw astonished us.

When he sees what you have done he will be angry.

I know what the man likes, night now.

9/ Interrogative Pronouns (បុច្ចនះសព្វនាម)

និយមន័យ: Interrogative Pronouns គឺជាស័ព្ទត្រូវបានគេច្រើសំរាប់សួរនូវសំនួរ ទូទៅមិនមាននាមឈរនៅក្បែទេ ដូចយើងដឹងស្រាប់ហើយថាពាក្យថាសព្វនាមត្រូវបាន គេច្រើជំនួស ដូច្នេះវ៉ាតែងតែឈរនៅដើមប្រយោគតែឯង មានដូចជាពាក្យថា Who, whom, whose, which, what,

EX: Who is speaking now?

Who wrote to me?

Who is our tour guide?

Whom do you want to see?

Whom is he speaking now?

With whom did you play?

Whose is this book, yours or mine?

Whose is that son?

Which is the best for you?

Which do you prefer?

What makes you smart?

10/ Distributive Pronouns

និយមន័យ: Distributive Pronouns គឺជាសព្វនាមមួយបែបដែលត្រូវបានគេ ប្រើដើម្បីធ្វើការបែងចែកជាផ្នែកៗ ក្នុងស័ព្ទដែលពាក់ព័ន្ឋ ។ មានដូចជាពាក្យថា each, either of, neither of.

EX: Each of the boys gets a prize.

Either of these roads leads to Bonteay Srey.

Either of you can go, now.

Neither of the accusation is true.

You have to pay \$ 4each for two ways.

ចំណាំ: each other and one another, តាមធម្មតា Each Other ប្រើសំរាប់និយាយទៅ លើមនុស្ស ឬ វត្ថុមានចំនួន ពីរ ឯរីពាក្យ One Another ប្រើសំរាប់និយាយទៅលើមនុស្ស ឬ វត្ថុដែលមានចំនួន ច្រើនជាងពីរ ហើយត្រូវបានលោកអ្នកប្រាជ្ញហៅថា Reciprocal Pronouns.

EX: The dogs quarreled each other.

We must take care each other.

We love each other.

They all gave evidence against one another.

All of them hate one another.

The End Of Pronouns

UNIT VI Preposition

និយមន័យ: Preposition គឺជាស័ព្ទមួយអំបូរដែលមានទូនាទីសំរាប់ធ្វើសន្នានកម្ម ពោលគឺសំរាប់តភ្ជាប់ពីពាក្យមួយទៅពាក្យផ្សេងទៀតដូចពាក្យថា In, At, Of, Under,

About, During, Touching, Owing to, According to, Regarding, In frong to, In case of, In stead of, In parallel toetc

- * Preposition ត្រូវបានគេបែងចែកជា 4 ប្រភេទគឺ
 - 1 Simple Preposition.
 - 2 Compound Preposition.
 - 3 Phrasal Preposition.
 - 4 Participle Preposition.

1 Simple Preposition

និយមន័យ: Simple Preposition គឺជាអាយឥនិបាតធម្មតាមានន័យថា ជាអាយឥនិបាត ដែលកើតឡើងដោយគ្មានការផ្សំជាមួយពាក្យដទៃផ្សេងទៀត ដើម្បីបង្កើត អត្តន័យនៃពាក្យនោះឡើយ ពោលគឺ Simple Preposition ជាពាក្យមួយមាត់ ឬមួយព្យាង្គ តែប៉ុណ្ណោះមានដូចជា At, By, For, From, In, Of, Off, On, Out, Through, Till, To, Up, With, Over, Down, Hear, Via, Since, Past, Round......etc

*****រប្បើបប្រើប្រាស់និមួយៗ

1 At ប្រើសំរាប់ពេលវេលា

EX:

We want to see you at dawn.

I will see her at 4:30 PM.

They arrive here at midnight.

ទី ២ ប្រើសំរាប់អាយុ

EX:

She got married at 23.

I started to learn English at 17.

The special leader died at 24.

ទី 1 By ប្រើសំរាប់ពេលវេលា កាលបរិច្ឆេត កំឡុងពេល ជាធម្មតាវាបញ្ជាក់ មុនពេលវេលា

EX:

He likes to travel by night/ by day.

The train starts at 6: 30am so you must go to the station by 6:00am.

By the end of next month he will have been here for ten years.

ទី 2 ប្រើសំរាប់ទីសដៅ ឬការធ្វើចលនា

EX:

We came to Oxford by way of Warwick and Baneberry

ទិ 3 ប្រើសំរាប់ជាទីភ្នាក់ងារ

EX:

This book was written by Mr. Sek.

I was tough by a great teacher.

ទី 4 ប្រើសំរាប់ការវ៉ាស់សង់

EX:

These goods are sold by weight.

He is older than I am by ten years.

ទី 5 ប្រើសំរាប់បញ្ជាក់អំពី Nearness

EX:

The girl in red! come and sit by me.

*ក្នុងលក្ខណៈពិសេស By ត្រូវបានគេប្រើជាឃ្លា ន័យគ្រាមភាសា

EX:

I will see you by and by = before long = soon.

Learn this by heart.

I mention this by way of illustration.

ទី1 For ប្រើសំរាប់ទីតាំងនៃពេលវេលាឬ ទី កន្លែង

EX:

I am staying here for a week.

The forest goes on for twenty miles.

ទី 2 ប្រើសំរាប់គោលបំណង

EX:

We come here for English lesson.

I use an electric razor for shaving.

ទី3 ប្រើសំរាប់បរិមាណ

EX:

The house was sold for £ 5, 000. We need gasoline for 3 liters.

ទី4 ប្រើសំរាប់ទីសដៅ

EX:

Which is the train for P.P? This bus leads us for Brighton.

ទី 5 ប្រើសំរាប់ចំនុចពេលវេលា

EX:

The meeting is arranged for 7:30 AM We start to learn English for 6:00 AM

ទី 1 From ប្រើសំរាប់ការឃ្លាតចាកទី

EX:

She came from Scotland last week. He rose from his poverty.

ទី 2 ប្រើសំរាប់ចំនុចចាប់ផ្ដើម ឬសំរាប់ទីដើម កន្លែងដើម

EX:

I read my book from Australia. The roses are from Tom.

ទី 3 ប្រើសំរាប់បុព្វហេតុ

EX:

She is suffering from a bad headache. I study every thing from the great teacher.

ទី 4 ប្រើសំរាប់ ការបំបែក ឬ ញែកចេញពី

EX:

He is far away from home wife and children.

ទី1 In ប្រេំសំរាប់ ទីតាំង ឬទីកន្លែង

EX:

I live in Siem Reap. She stays in Phnom Penh.

There are twenty students in thin room.

ទី 2 ប្រើសំរាប់ជាគុណកិរិយា (Adverb)

EX:

Go in, don't wait outside.

Has the nine o'clock train come in yet?

ទី3 ប្រើសំរាប់កាលៈ ទេសៈ ឬ លក្ខខណ្ឌ

EX:

In prison, In the dark, In good condition, In good, Health, In debt, In danger, In a bad tem per,

```
ទី4 ប្រើសំរាប់ជាគុណកិរិយា (Adverb)
EX:
        Is the fire in?
ទី 5 ប្រើសំរាប់ស្លេក្រពក់ ឬ ក្រប់
EX:
        She was dressed in silk.
        William was in uniform.
ទី6 ប្រើសំរាប់ពេលវេលា
EX:
        In the morning, In the afternoon, In the evening.
        I began to work here in January.
ទី10f ច្រើសំរាប់ទំរង់កម្មសិទ្ធិ
EX:
        The tail of the dog.
        The love of the parents.
        The tower of London.
ទី 2 ប្រើសំរាប់ កម្មសិទ្ធិតំរូតគ្នា
EX:
        A brother of mine.
        A friend of hers.
        A car of Tom's.
ទី3 ប្រើសំរាប់ប្រភពដើម ឬ ភាពជាអ្នកនិពន្ធ
EX:
        I am a boy of poor family
        This is a poem of Miltom.
ទី4 ប្រើសំរាប់ រង្វាស់ ឬ បរិមាណ
EX:
        A yard of cloth.
        A pound of sugar.
        A packet of cigarette.
        Some of that cake.
ទី1 Off ប្រើសំរាប់ គំនិតគិតថា ឃ្លាតចេញពី
EX:
        She pushed the books off the table.
        He jumped off the train.
        I take off my hat.
ទី2 ប្រើសំរាប់ជាគុណកិរិយា (Adverb)
EX:
        This grass is newly sown, keep off !!!.
```

ទី3 ប្រើដូចជាផ្ទុយនិងពាក្យ On

EX:

Don't take your coat off, keep it on.

ទី4 ប្រើជាន័យគ្រាមភាសា

EX:

She is very well off. I visit them off and on. He can talk to you off hand.

ទី 1 On ប្រើសំរាប់ទីតាំង

EX:

The book is on the desk. London is on the Thames,

ទី 2 ប្រើសំរាប់ពេលវេលា

On Monday, on Suday, He came here on May 1st.

ទី3 ប្រើន័យដូចពាក្យ About.

EX:

He gave a lecture on India. I want to talk on every day life.

ទី 4 ប្រើន័យដូចពាក្យ Continuance (បន្ត)

Go on. Come on , keep on. Sleep on.

ទី 5 ប្រើន័យផ្ទុយពីពាក្យ Off

The gas off or on. Turn the water on.

ទី 6 ប្រើសំរាប់ន័យ គ្រាមភាសា

EX:

I am not a bad boy on the whole.

The house is on the fire.

A police man is not allowed to smoke on duty.

On the contrary I love him.

The goods will be on sale tomorrow.

ទី 1 Through ប្រើសំរាប់ទីតាំង ឬ ចលនា ជាទូទៅផ្លាស់ប្តូរពីចំនែកម្ខាង ទៅចំនែកផ្សេង

EX:

He knocked a nail through the wood.

They read the lovely book through.

I have come through a lot of difficulties.

Air comes in through the venti lator.

ទី 2 ប្រើសំរាប់ពេលវេលា

EX:

The kids talked about it all through dinner.

The railway line was repaired through the night.

ទី 3 ប្រើសំរាប់ ភ្នាក់ងារ

EX:

I got the job through my girl friend.

He bought the property through a house agent.

ទី 1 Till

EX:

We won't be home till morning. He stayed till long after midnight.

Till អាចជាសន្មានស័ព្ទ ដូចជា

I will wait till you come.

ទី 1 To ប្រើសំរាប់ទីសដៅនៃការធ្វើចលនា

EX:

I'm going to London.

Please come to me, my dear.

ទី2 ប្រើសំរាប់ធ្វើការកំណត់

EX:

I am faithful to the end.

She was good to the last.

Classes are from 9 o'clock to 5 o'clock.

ទី 3 ប្រើសំរាប់ធ្យេបគ្នា

EX:

This car is superior to that one.

She is inferior to me.

We are equal to them

What she said to me is nothing to what she said to him.

ទី4 ប្រើសំរាប់ជាផ្នែកជា infinitive

EX:

I want to go home.

She said that to frighten me.

ទី 5 ប្រើជាកម្មបទមិនផ្ទាល់

EX:

Give that to me.

I lost a lot of money to the old car.

ទី 6 ប្រើជា គុណកិរិយា (Adverb)

EX:

Pull the door to.

The work must be done, so set to (= To work).

ទី 1 Up ប្រើសំរាប់បញ្ជាក់អំពីភាពផ្ទុយពី Down.

EX:

He walked up the hill.

They put up a flag.

ទី 2 ប្រើជាគុណកិរិយា (Adverb) តែអត្តន័យផ្សេងគ្នា

EX:

The sun is up.

The house is up at last.

Plants come up in the spring.

I was up all night.

Prices are going up.

My time is up.

You must pay up, today.

Wake up.

Speak up.

Hurry up.

ទី 1 With ប្រើបញ្ជាក់ពីភាពអបស្តូប ឬ ផ្សែផ្សំ

EX:

He comes with all his family.

Don't wear brown shoes with a blue suit.

ទី 2 ប្រើសំរាប់ការព្រមព្រេ្យង ឬ ការមិនព្រមព្រេ្យង

EX:

I don't want to quarrel with her.

She disagrees with me on most matters.

ទី 3 ប្រើសំរាប់ក្រឿងឧបករណ៍

EX:

Cut the bread with this knife.

He hit the dog with a stick.

ទី 4 ច្រើសំរាប់បុព្វហេតុ

EX:

The old man was bent with age and dying with hunger.

ទី 5 ប្រើសំរាប់បញ្ជាក់ពីលក្ខណៈ

EX:

He fought with bravery.

He stood with his hands in his pockets.

ទី 6 ប្រើសំរាប់បញ្ជាក់បែបកម្មសិទ្ធិ

EX:

A girl with golden hair.

A house with a large garden.

ទី 7 ប្រើសំរាប់បញ្ជាក់ពីវត្ថមួយស្ថិតក្នុងវត្ថមួយផ្សេងទៀត

EX:

His pockets were filled with money.

ទី 1 Over ប្រើសំរាប់ធ្វើការបញ្ជាក់អ្វីមួយ ន័យស្ថើ finish.

EX:

The war is over.

The time is over.

All your troubles are now over.

ទី 2 ប្រើសំរាប់វត្ថនៅសេសសល់អាចប្រែថាសល់ ឬនៅសល់

EX:

I paid the bill and have three pound over.

ទី 3 ប្រើសំរាប់ចំនួនច្រើនពេកឬ លើស ពីភាពល្មម

EX:

I pay for food over \$ 40.

The meat is over-cooked.

We were over-charged for these goods.

He is over-worked.

ទី 4 ប្រើសំរាប់ចលនាចំពោះអត្ថន័យពិតនោះយោងតាមកិរិយាស័ព្ទនោះៗ

ដែលត្រូវបានគេប្រើជាមួយ over

EX:

Fall over, knock over, bend over, Hand over, Turn over.

The milk boiled over.

ទី 5 ប្រើជាគុណកិរិយា (Adverb) បញ្ជាក់ពី (ចំងាំយ)

EX:

In Britain, We are having hot weather, but over in America they are having snowstorms.

ទី 6 តាមអត្ថន័យផ្សេងៗ ដែលត្រូវបានគេឃើញក្នុងប្រយោគដូចតទៅ

EX:

He couldn't enter for the examination because he was over age.

(ចាស់ជ្រុល) (More than).

There is a bridge over the river.

He jumped over the wall (Above and Across) (រំលាត់ផ្លោះ)

That picture cost over £ 10,000.

ទី 1 Down ប្រើសំរាប់បញ្ជាក់ពីចលនាពីទីខ្ពស់ជាងទៅទីទាបជាង

EX:

They walked down the hill.

The sun goes down in the west.

Sit down, there is plenty of room for every one.

ទី 2 ប្រើជាន័យគ្រាមភាសាតែដើរតួរជា (Adverb)

EX:

Perhaps he was down on his luck (In misfortune)

She looked very down in the mouth

The wind has died down (Become less strong)

Write these notes down in your notebook.

The sleeve of my coat is too short, I will ask the tailor to let it down an inch.

He has come down in the world (Become poorer or less important).

ទី1 Near ប្រើបញ្ជាក់ទីតាំង

EX:

His house is near the temple.

ទី 2 Near ប្រើជាគុណនាម (Adjective)

EX:

He is a near relation.

ទី 3 ប្រើជាកិរិយាស័ព្ទ (Verb)

EX:

The time nears.

ទី 4 ប្រើជាគុណក៏រិយា (Adverb)

EX:

Draw near and listen.

ទី 1 Via ប្រើសំរាប់ការឆ្លងកាត់ប្រែថា តារយៈ

EX:

I bought a nice car via her idea.

He takes his property via the thai border.

ទី 1 Since ប្រើបញ្ជាំពីចំនុចពេលវេលាជាក់លាក់ក្នុងអតីត: រហុតដល់បច្ចុប្បន្ន

EX:

I have been here since 2004.

They have been waiting for us since 4 o'clock.

ទី 2 ប្រើជា Adverb ផងដែរ

EX:

I saw him last Christmas, I haven't seen him since.

She has spoken to me since.

ទី1 Past ប្រើអត្តន័យដូចពាក្យ Beyond

EX:

It is past six o'clock

The old horse is past work.

She walked past my door (Up to and beyond).

ទី 2 Past អាចជាគុណកិរិយា (Adverb)

EX:

The years went past.

She saw me but walked past without speaking.

ទី 1 Round ប្រើសំរាប់ទីតាំង

EX:

There is a rope round the tree.

ទី 2 ប្រើសំរាប់ចលនា

EX:

He walked round the nice garden.

Drake sailed round the world.

ទី 3 ប្រើជាគុណកិរិយា

EX:

He went into the garden and walked round.

Nobody can turn round.

Our dresses not only make you look slim, they make men look round.

2/ Compound Preposition

និយមន័យ: Compound Preposition គឺជាអាយតនិបាតដែលកើតឡើងដោយការផ្សំ

គ្នាជាមួយពាក្យដទៃទៀត ដើម្បីបង្កើតអត្ថន័យរួមគ្នាតែមួយ ដូចជា :

Underneath, Across, About, Below, Along, Within, Without, Inside, Outside, Beside, Around, Admit, Until, Beyond, Behind, Between, Before, (Among,) Above, Amid, Into, Except to, Below, Towards (Toward), Beneath,

\star រប្បើបប្រើប្រាស់នៃពាក្យនិមួយៗ តែមិនទាំងអស់ទេ សូមអ្នកសិក្សាស្រាវជ្រាវខ្លះ ផងចុះ ។

ទី1 Below ប្រើជាទូទាមានន័យស្នើនិង ពាក្យ Under

EX:

The temperature is below freezing point.

Write your name in the space below.

ទី 2 ប្រើជាទូទៅមានន័យផ្ទុយនិងពាក្យ "Above"

EX:

To keep warm you need dankest above and below you. Jan's work is above average, Hob's is very much below it.

ទី1 Beside ប្រើន័យដូចពាក្យ Near

EX:

Go and sit beside Tom.

My home is beside the river.

ទី 2 ប្រើក្នុងន័យគ្រាមភាសា

EX:

He was beside himself with anger.(Almost mad)

What you have said is quite beside the point (Not connected with the subject).

ទី1 Besides ប្រើន័យដូចពាក្យ "In addition to "

EX:

No one writes to me besides you, my dear.

There are many others besides me who disagree with what you say.

ទី 2 អាចដើរតួរជាគុណកិតិយា មានន័យស្នើ "Moreover"

EX:

I don't want to go for a walk, I'm tired, and besides, it's beginning to rain.

សូមអ្នកសិក្សាទាំងឡាយទស្សទាយពាក្យទាំងនេះរវាងពាក្យ Beside and Besides

ថាតើពួកគេធ្វើការងារយ៉ាងណា ?

"I do like to be beside the sea...... And there's lots of girls, besides,

I should like to be beside, beside the sea"

ទី 1 Beyond ព្រឹមានន័យស្ពើ "On the other," "Further side," "Further on" "More than".

EX:

The woods go for about three miles beyond the river.

I love my girl friend beyond mea sure.

He lives in a small castle, about four miles beyond Siem Reap.

ទី 2 ប្រើក្នុងន័យគ្រាមភាសា

EX:

The explanation you give is quite beyond me (= I can't understand).

He lives beyond his means (= Spending move than he earns).

The prisoner's quilt was proved beyond doubt (=There was no doubt about it).

ទី 1 Before ប្រើបញ្ជាក់ពីពេលវេលា ផ្ទុយ និង After.

EX:

Come and see me tomorrow any time before five o'clock.

Before long you will find this work quite simple.

That happened in 400 before Christ (BC)

ទី 2 Before ប្រើក្នុងទីតាំង ឬ លំដាប់

EX:

She sang before a large audience.

My appointment is not until 10-15, You go in before me.

ទី 1 Behind ប្រើបញ្ជាក់ ពីទិចនោះ

EX:

The garage is behind the house.

He stood just behind me.

ទី2 ប្រើបញ្ជាក់ ពីពេលវេលា

EX:

The train is behind time (= Late).

He is behind the times (=Old-fashioned).

ទី1 Towards (Toward) ប្រើបញ្ជាក់ពីទីសដៅ

EX:

Go towards the window.

This house faces towards the south.

ទី 2 ប្រើសំរាប់បញ្ជាក់ពីការស្ថិតនៅក្មេកនិងពេលវេលា

EX:

I hope to arrive toward six o'clock.

ទី 3 ច្រើមានន័យស៊ើ With regard to.

EX:

I have always felt kindly towards him.

3/ Phrasal Preposition

និយមន័យ: Phrasal Preposition គឺជាក្រុមនៃអាយតនិបាត ដែលកើតឡើងដោយក្រុម ហើយ ពួកគេទាំងនោះធ្វើការរួមគ្នា បង្កើតអត្ថន័យតែមួយដូចជា :

- According to -in stead of. - Agreeably to. - in the event of. -Along with. - on account of. - Away from - owing to. - Because of. - with a view to. - By dint of - with an eye to. - By means of - with reference to. - By reason of. - with regard to. - By virtue of - in the name of. - By way of. - In parallel to. - Conformably to. -in contrast to - For the shake of. -on contrast. - In accordance with. -in favour of. - In front of. - in addition to. - In lieu of. - in reference to. - In order to. - in regard to. - In spite of. - in spite of. - In place of. - in place of. - In reference to. - in lieu of. - In regard to. - in order to. - in front of. - In spite of. - In comparison to - in course of. - In (on) behalf of - in compliance with. - In case of. - in consequence of.

4/ Participle Preposition

និយមន័យ: Participle preposition គឺអាយតនិបាតមួយអំបូរដែលកើតឡើង ដោយពាក្យ Ing នៅខាងចុងប៉ុន្តែមាន ពាក្យផ្សំមិនមានដូចជា :

Barring, Concerning, Considering, During, Notwithstanding, Pending, Regarding, Respecting, Touching,...etc

<u>ចំណាំ</u> According to, Owing to ពាក្យផ្សំយ៉ាងនេះមិនសង្គ្រោះចូលក្នុង (Participle

Preposition) ថ្វីត្បិតតែពាក្យនេះមាន Ing នៅខាងចុងក៏ដោយ។

The End Of Preposition

<u>UNIT VII</u> Conjunction (សន្ធានស័ព្ទ)

និយមន័យ: Conjunction គឺជាពាក្យដែលមានតួនាទីសំរាប់ធ្វើការតភ្ជាប់នូវប្រយោត ទៅនិងប្រយោគមួយទៀត ដូចជា

But, Or, And, Because, While, As, If, As soon as, Ever, Though, As long as, As well as, Even if.....etc.

- * នៅក្នុងភាសាអង់គ្លេស Conjunction ចែកចេញជា បី ប្រភេទគឺ :
 - 1 Co-ordinating Conjunctions
 - 2 Subbordinating Conjunctions
 - **3 Compound Conjunctions**

1/ Co-ordinating Conjunctions គឺជាសន្នានស័ព្ទដែលច្រើសំរបសំរួលក្នុង ការតភ្ជាប់ ប្រយោគទាំងឡាយបញ្ចូលគ្នា ហើយធ្វើឱ្យប្រយោគទាំងនោះមានតំលៃខ្លួន ប៉ុនគ្នា ឬសំខាន់ដូចគ្នា ដូចជា :

And, But, Both...And; Or, Either...Or

Neither...Nor; Not only...But also; For, So.

EX: He is intelligent but lazy.

I make the payments and keep the accounts.

He works quickly and accurately.

Go to the office and you can turn on the light.

She is beautiful but poor.

We came in first but (we) didn't wine the race.

Both boys and girls were drafted into the office.

You have neither brothers nor sisters.

He can neither read nor write.

The kids can either speak or sing English.

The birds can either fly or walk.

A fish can neither fly nor walk.

Not only men but also women were chosen.

All precautions must have been neglected, for the plague spread rapidly.

Our cases are heavy, so we take a taxi.

- *នៅក្នុងភាសាអង់គ្លេស Co-ordinating Conjunction ចែកជា 4 ប្រភេទគឺ :
 - 1 Cumulative or Copulative Conjunction.
 - 2 Adversative Conjunction.
 - 3 Disjunctive Oralternative Conjunction.
 - 4 Illative Conjunction.
- 1/ Cumulative or Copulative Conjunction គឺជាអំបូរ នៃសន្ធានស័ព្ទ (ឈ្នាប់) មួយ

ប្រភេទដែលត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់បន្ថែមសេចក្តីថែងការមួយ ទៅមួយផ្សេងទៀត ឬ ហៅថាជាសន្មានស័ព្ទដែលមានលក្ខណៈគំរុគាដូចពាក្យថា " And"

EX: I am write a song *and* sing sweetly.

we drink so much beer and danc happily, tonight.

He is poor and lazy (ក្របីអាយិផែនដី).

That family loves each other and lives together every day.

2/ Adversative Conjunction

គឺជាសន្ធានសព្ទមួយអំបូរដែលបញ្ជាក់ទៅលើភាពផ្ទុយកាឬប្រឆាំងគ្នារវាងសេចក្តីថ្លែងការណ៍ពីរដូ ចជាពាក្យថា But; Still, Only, Yet,

EX:

He is so slow, but he is sure.

They are rich, but behave badly.

I am annoyed, still I deep quiet slightly.

She was all right *only* she was slightly fatigued.

ចំណាំ: ពាក្យ But and Yet ប្រែថាប៉ុន្តែ ពាក្យថា Still ប្រែថា "តែទោះយ៉ាងណាក៏ដោយ" ក្នុងការងារជាឈ្នាប់ ឯវិពាក្យថា Only ក្នុងការងារឈ្នាប់ ប្រែថា ប៉ុន្តែ ន័យដូចពាក្យថា But ដែរ ។

3/ Disjunctive or Alternative conjunction

គឺជាសន្ធានស័ព្ទមួយបែបដែលត្រូវបានកេប្រើដើម្បីបញ្ជាក់ពីជំរើសរវាងចំរើសពីរដូចជា Else, or,

Neither...Nor, Either....

EX:

Do it else I'll go in a minute.

You must surrender *or* you will die.

You walk quickly *or* you will not over take.

She has either car *or* a good job.

My girlfriend is either clever or pretty.

He is either handsome or rich.

I am neither happy nor sad (tree).

She drinks neither beer nor coke.

He has neither brother nor sister.

ចំណាំ: ពាក្យ Or and Else ប្រែថា បើមិនអញ្ជឹងទេ Either......Or ទាំង.....ទាំង....

4/ Illative Conjunction គឺជាប្រភេទនៃសន្ទានស័ព្ទដែលប្រើបញ្ជាក់ពី មានពាក្យ "For"

All pre cautions must have been neglected, for the plaque spread rapidly.

I do study hard, for I love my wife.

2 Subordinating Conjunction:

គឺជាពពួកសន្ទានស័ព្ទមួយប្រផេទដែលមានទូនាទីសំរាប់តភ្ជាប់ប្រយោគទាំងឡាយ

បញ្ចូលគ្នា ប៉ុន្តែប្រយោគទី ២ ដែលនាំមុខដោយ Subordinating conjunction នោះមិនមានតំលៃសំខាន់ដូចប្រយោគដែលឈរនៅខាងមុខ Subordinating conjunction.

Subordinating conjunction ជានិច្ចជាកាលជាប្រយោគដែលទាក់ទង Subordinating clause ដែលជាប្រយោគអាចមានន័យលុះត្រាតែពីងលើប្រយោគខាង ដើម ។ Subordinating

conjunction មានដូចជា : After, Because, If, That, Though, Till, Before, Unless, As,

When, Where, While, Why, Since, So that, So, Yet.

After the shower was over the sun shore out again .

He ran away because he was afraid.

You will pass if you work hard.

Tell them that I come.

He finished first though he began behind time.

A book's a book, although there is nothing in it.

Will you wait till I return?

Answer the first question before you proceed.

He will not pay unless he is compelled.

He may enter as he is a friend.

I don't know when he comes.

She found her watch where she had loft if.

Make hay while the sun shines.

I don't care why he stops speaking with me since you say so, I must believe it.

Since នៅក្នុងការងារនេះប្រែថា "ដោយហេតុថា"

* Subordinating conjuction ត្រូវបានគេបែងចែកយោងទៅតាម អត្ថន័យរបស់វា ដូចតទៅនេះ

ទី 1 សំរាប់ពេលវេលា:

EX: I returned home after he had gone.

We are waiting for you till you call to us.

He will die before he reaches his good.

Check and verify your currency before leaving.

ទី 2 សំរាប់ហេតុផល

EX:

My strength is as the strength of ten, because my heart is pure.

He can take it as he is a policeman.

She has gone away since you say so.

ទី 3 សំរាប់បំណង:

EX:

We eat so we may live.

He help my hand lest I should fall.

ទី 4 សំរាប់លទ្ធផល ឬ កម្មវិបាក

EX:

Tell him that I am at home.

Tell his wife that he is drunk.

ទី 5 សំរាប់លក្ត័ណ្ឌ

EX:

I will go if my car is ok.

They don't understand this unless they work hard.

ទី 6 សំរាប់ ការសុខចិត្ត

EX:

You will not see him though he comes.

A book's a book, although there's nothing in.

ទី 7 សំរាប់ការ ប្រេ្យបធ្យេប

EX:

He richer than me.

She is whiter than him.

ចំណាំ: ពាក្យ As = Because. ពាក្យ So that =ដើម្បឱ្យ Lest=ដើម្បកុំឱ្យ That= ថា Unless= លុះត្រាតែ ។ការប្រើប្រាស់រួម

When, While, As ប្រើបញ្ជាក់ពីពេលវេលា "ន័យដូចគា" ប៉ុន្តែ When ត្រូវបានគេប្រើក្នុងកាល Simple tense ពេលសកម្មភាពមួយកើតឡើង ក្នុងបេលជាមួយសកម្មភាពផ្សេងឡើត EX:

When he lived in the town we often went to the picture.

When it is wet the buses ore crowded......

3/ Compound Conjunction.

និយមន័យ: Compound Conjunction

គឺជាសន្ធានស័ព្ទមួយបែបដែលកើតឡើងដោយការផ្សំរវាងសន្ធានស័ព្ទ និង សន្ធានស័ព្ទ

ដោយការធ្វើការរួមគ្នាដើម្បីបង្កើតអត្ថន័យតែមួយមានដូចជា :

In order that, On condition, As though, Inasmuch as, As well as, As soon, As if as far as, As long as.

EX:

The notice was published in order that all might know the facts.

I will forgive you on condition that you do not repeat the offence.

He saved some bread so that he should not go hungry on tomorrow.

You can borrow the book provided that you return it soon.

He walks as though he is slightly lame.

I must refuse your request in as much as I believe it unreasonable.

We help you as well as your family.

He took off his coat as soon as he entered the

He eats like this as if he is a king.

UNIT VIII

ADVERB (កុណកិរិយា)

និយមន័យ Adverb គឺជាគុណក៏វិយាមួយបែបដែលប្រើសំរាប់

បញ្ជាក់បន្ថែមអត្ថន័យទៅលើកិរិយាស័ព្ទ គុណនាម គុណកិរិយាខ្លួនឯង

ឱ្យកាន់តែច្បាស់ថែមឡើតមានដូចជា ពាក្យថា :

Slowly; Quickly; Rapidly; Generally; So, pretty; Seldom; Rarely; Scarily; How long; Here; There; Where; Why; How much often; How much longer....etc.

- * នៅក្នុងផាសាអង់គ្លេស Adverb ត្រុវបានគេបែងចែកជាបីប្រភេទគឺ :
 - 1 Simple Adverb
 - 2 Conjunction Adverb
 - 3 Interrogative Adverb

1 Simple Adverb

និយមន័យ Simple Adverb គឺជាប្រភេទនៃគុណក៏វិយាដែលមានលក្ខណសាមញ្ញូ ដូចពាក្យថា Now, Before; Inside, Outside, Fast; Easily, Sweetly, Happily; Carefully....etc.

- * នៅក្នុងភាសាអង់គ្លេស Simple Adverb ត្រូវបានគេបែងចែកជាច្រើន ដូចជា:
 - 1 Simple Adverb of Time.
 - 2 Simple Adverb of Place
 - 3 Simple Adverb of Manner
 - 4 Aimple Adverb of Frequency
 - 5 Simple Adverb of Reason
 - 6 Simple Adverb of Affirmation and Negation
 - 7 Simple Adverb of Duration
 - 8 Simple Adverb of Quantity
 - 9 Simple Adverb of Exclamation
 - 10 Simple Adverb of Degree

អត្ថាធិប្បាយ លើអត្ថាធិប្បា

1 Simple adverb of Time

និយមន័យ Simple Adverb of Time គឺជាប្រភេទនៃគុណកិរិយាប្រើសំរាប់ បញ្ជាក់ពី ពេលវេលា

មានដ្ឋិចជា : Now, Soon; Still; Then; Today; Yet; Before; Late; Ago; Lately; Daily;

Already; Yesterday; Formerly; Never; Ever; Once

EX:

I have heard this before.

We will now begin our work.

She had a letter from him lately.

He comes here daily.

I once met her at PP.

The family formerly lived in poor condition.

That day he arrived late.

He called her a few minutes ago.

The end soon comes.

I hurt my knee yesterday.

My wested time with love never returns. She is still in bed.

He still doesn't under stand me.

She is still in bed.

2/ Simple Adverb of Place.

និយមន័យ: Simple Adverb of Place គឺជាអំបូរនៃ គុណកិតិយាមួយប្រភេទដែល

ប្រើសំរាប់បញ្ជាក់ពីទឹកន្លែងមានដូចជា : Here; There; Inside; Outside; Away; Everywhere;

Nowhere; Somewhere; Anywhere; Up; Down back ward; Forward. Abroad; Home, Down stair, Upstairs, With in, With out....

EX:

Stand here!

Go there!

Don't stay inside.

Who works outside?

The horse galloped away.

The little lamb followed my wife everywhere.

Where are you going? Nowhere.

The threatening people will get you nowhere.

I've seen that man somewhere.

Can you see my key anywhere?

He looked up.

He was looked down.

Walk backward.

Walk forward.

He used to live abroad.

Don't go home, now..

She is upstair.

He sleeps downstair.

Is Dr. Das within?

3/ Simple Adverb of Manner.

និយមន័យ : Simple Adverb of Manner គឺជាគុណកិរិយាមួយបែបប្រើដើម្បី បញ្ជាក់ពី

លក្ខណៈឬ លក្ខណៈប៉ាងណានិមួយ ដូចជា: Clearly; Well; Soundly; Sadly; So; Bravely;

Hard; Agreeably; Reluctantly; Badly; Beautifully; Sweetly; Foolishly; Generously;

Kindly; Stupidly; Simply; Happily; etc

EX:

My son can read English clearly.

This story is well written.

My brother sleeps soundly.

They are living sadly.

Our daughter is so beautiful.

You should not do so.

They fought bravely.



The boy work hard.

I was agreeably disappointed.

He gave her the money reluctantly.

I can sing beautifully.

Hob foolishly forgot his lesson.

She kindly waited for me.

Teacher generously paid for us all.

My dog sometime does stupidly.

We work simple.

I want to live happily.

They managed somehow.

Somehow he pretends to be angry

They make money somehow.

4/ Simple Adverb of Frequency.

និយមន័យ: Simple Adverb of Frequency គឺជាប្រភេទ នៃគុណក៏រិយាប្រើសំរាប់បញ្ជាក់ពី

ភាពញឹកញាប់យ៉ាងណា មានដូចជា: Twice; Once; Often; Again; Frequently; Seldom;

Always; Continually; Occasionally; Periodically; Repeatedly; Sometimes; Usually; Ever; Never; Rarely; Once again; Again and again; Time and time again; Two times a day;

Once a week; Annually; Weekly. Daily...etc

EX:

I have told you twice.

The black dog often makes mistakes.

I have never seen him once.

We have to do it again.

He frequently comes unprepared.

He seldom comes here.

The workers periodically take a rest..

That problem is done repeatedly.

I have never seen the tiger.

He rarely goes to KARAOKE / KTV.

5/ Simple Adverb of Quantity.

និយមន័យ : Simple Adverb of Quantity គឺជាអំបូនៃគុណក៏រិយាមួយប្រភេទដែលត្រូវបាន

គេប្រើសំរាប់បញ្ជាក់ពីបរិមាណ/ ចំណុះ នៃសកម្មភាពដែលត្រូវបានគេធ្វើឡើងមានដូចជា :

Much; Enough; Adequate; Very; So; Too; Extremely; Very; Quite; Rather; Nearly; Just; Almost; Entirely; Completely; As; Fully; Partly; Any; Some; A little; No;

Altogether...etc.

EX:

My friend drunk too much last night.

It rains enough this year.

Thank you very much.

Don't drink too much, my dear.

You are extremely brilliant in English.

She is quite good in my heart.

This car is rather expensive.

Is that any better?

I'm fully prepared.

You are altogether mistaken.

Things are no better at present.

You are partly right.

I understand a little from your explanation.

He is as poor as me.

6/ Simple Adverb of Reason

និយមន័យ: Simple Adverb of Reason គឺជាគុណក៏វិយាសព្ទមួយបែបដែល

ត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់បញ្ជាក់អំពីហេតុផល មានដូចជា Hence; Therefore.

EX:

She is hence unable refuse the promise.

He therefore help each other.

7/ Simple Adverb of Affirmation and Negation.

និយមន័យ: Simple Adverb of Affirmation and Negation

គឺជាគុណកិរិយាមួយអំបូរដែលត្រូវបានគេប្រើបញ្ជាក់ពីសេចក្តីថ្លែងការស្រប និង

សេចក្តីថ្លែងការបដិសេធ មានដូចជា Yet, No, Not, Surly; Certainly, Perhaps, Probably,

Indeed; Definitely, Obviously; Actually; In fact, Really, Apparently; Clearly; Evidently, Presumably, Undoubtedly,...etc.

EX: សំរាប់ Negation

I do not know him.

I do not go and see him.

He is not my friend.

* ប្រើដាកដើមប្រយោគ

No, She is happier than him.

No, He can't sing beautifully.

No, I am not his staff anymore.

EX: សំរាប់ Affirmation

Surely she is so beautiful.

He certainly loves his wife.

I perhaps go tomorrow.

I say that indeed.

They undoubtedly understand my heart.

ចំណាំ: No, Not ចាត់ចូលក្នុង Simple Adverb of Negation ពាក្យដទៃផ្សេងទៀតសង្គ្រោះចូល

ក្នុង Simple Adverb of Affirmation ទាំងអស់

8/ Simple Adverb of Duration

និយមន័យ: Simple Adverb of Duration

គឺជាអំបូរនៃគុណក៏វិយាម្យ៉ាងច្រើសំរាប់បញ្ជាក់ពីកំឡុងពេលមានពាក្យ For; Till; Until; Up To, From....To, From.....Till; from....Untill...etc.

🏶 នៅក្នុងភាសាអង់គ្លេសគេចែកជាបីប្រភេទគឺ:

- 1 ក្រុមពាក្យដែលដឹកនាំដោយពាក្យ For
- 2 ក្រុមពាក្យដែលដឹកនាំដោយពាក្យ Until; Till; Up to.
- 3 ក្រុមពាក្យដែលដឹកនាំដោយពាក្យ

From....to

From...till

From....until

1 ក្រុមពាក្យដែលដឹកនាំដោយពាក្យ For

EX:

I have loved you for a long time.

He has worked as a teacher for 5 year.

I have studied English for 10 years.

2 ក្រុមពាក្យដែលដឹកនាំដោយពាក្យ Until; Till; Up to

EX:

I love you until I die

They sat for hours till he came.

He livesin poverty up to next life.

3 ក្រុមពាក្យដែលដឹកនាំដោយពាក្យ

From....to

From....till

From....until

EX:

I have found my pen from 7: 00 PM until 8: 00PM.

My father is waiting for me from morning to evening.

He had worked hard from day time to night time.

9/ Simple Adverb of Degree

និយមន័យ : Simple Adverb of Degree គឺជាប្រភេទនៃគុណកិរិយា ត្រូវបានគេច្រើដើម្បី

បញ្ជាក់ពីករិត មានដូចជា Absolutely; Almost; Barely; Completely; Enough; Entirely;

Even; Extremely; Fairly; For; Hardly; Just; Much; Nearly; Only; Pretty; Quite; Rather; Really, Scarily, So; Too; Very; Any; No; Partly; Altogether. Fully, ...etc. EX:

You are absolutely right.

I'm almost wrong.

I love you fully, my dear.

ចំណាំ ឧទាហរណ៍ខ្ញុំមិនធ្វើច្រើនទេអាស្រ័យ Simple Adverb of Degree អាចហៅថា Simple

Adverb of Quantity អត់ទាស់ខុសអីទេ អាចមើលក្នុង (Simple Adverb of Quantity)

នៅចំណុចទី5 ព្រោះវាប្រព្រិត្តត្រូវ ប្រើបញ្ជាក់ពីលក្ខណសម្បត្តិដូចគ្នា ឬ បញ្ជាក់ពីក៏វិត ឬ

ក៏រិតយ៉ាងណា១ ដូច្នេះហៅមួយណាក៏បានដែរ ។

ॐអត្ថាធិប្បាយ

2. Conjunctive Adverb

និយមន័យ: Conjunctive Adverb គឺជាសន្ធានក៏រិយាស័ព្ទមានតួរនាទីសំរាប់ធ្វើសន្ធានការី
ប្រយោគ និងប្រយោគទាំងឡាយ Conjunctive Adverb អាចហៅថា Relative Adverb ក៏បាន
មានដូចជា Where, When, How much often, How long; Why.....etc.
នៅក្នុងភាសាអង់គ្លេស Conjunctive Adverb ចែកជាច្រើនដូចជា

- 1. Conjunctive Adverb of Place
- 2. Conjunctive Adverb of Time
- 3. Conjunctive Adverb of Manner
- 4. Conjunctive Adverb of Purpose
- 5. Conjunctive Adverb of Frequency
- 6. Conjunctive Adverb of Quantity
- 7. Conjunctive Adverb of Reason or Cause
- 8. Conjunctive Adverb of Condition
- 9. Conjunctive Adverb of Result or Consequence
- 10. Conjunctive Adverb of Comparison
- 11. Conjunctive Adverb of Supposition or Concession
- 12. Conjunctive Adverb of Duration

អត្ថាធិប្បាយ លើអត្ថាធិប្បាយ

1/ Conjunctive Adverb of Place

និយមន័យ: Conjunctive Adverb of Place គឺជាសម្ព័ន្ធកិរិយាស័ព្ទវិសេស មានពាក្យ
"Where" or "Wherever" ត្រូវបានគេប្រើដាក់កណ្ដាលប្រយោគពីរសមរាប់តភ្ជាប់ ប្រយោគ
ទាំងឡាយបញ្ចូលគ្នា ដើម្បីបញ្ជាក់ពីទឹកន្លែង ឬ ទីតាំងនៃសកម្មភាព ។
EX:

I have put it where I can find it again.

Let him be arrested where he may be found.

Where you live I will live.

We don't want to live where there are mary landmines.

The elephants live where there is safty.

I can stay where I am.

2/ Conjunctive Adverb of Time

និយមន័យ: Conjunctive Adverb of Time គឺជាប្រភេទនៃសន្ធនកិតិយាស័ព្ទវិសេសមួយអំ បូរដែលត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់តភ្ជាប់ប្រយោគដើន្បីបញ្ជាក់ទីតាំងនៃពេលវេលាមានពាកថា when; whenever. While.After; Before; Since; As. As soon asetc. EX:

English Grammar

When you finished your work you may go home.

I will do it when I think it's worth doing.

Don't be noisy while grandpa is sleeping.

I came after night had fallen.

Do it before you forget it.

Before you go bring me a beautiful girl =

Bing me a beautiful girl before you go.

I have not been well since she got married.

There was silence as the leader spoke.

As he came into the room all rose to their feet.

I always go home whenever I miss my family.

He wrote to me as soon as he heard the news

3/ Conjunctive Adverb of Manner

និយមន័យ: Conjunctive Adverb of Manner

តឺជាសម្ព័ន្ធកិរិយាស័ព្ទវិសេសមួយអំបូរដែលប្រើដើម្បីបញ្ជាក់លក្ខណៈ ដោយមានពាក្យ "how"

EX:

He can tell how he as came to this decision.

Please; teach me how I can drive a can.

I wonder how I get off my helmet.

4 /Conjunctive Adverb of Purpose.

និយមន័យ : Conjunctive Adverb of Purpose គឺសម្ព័ន្ធក៏រិយាវិសេសម្យ៉ាងប្រើដើម្បី បញ្ជាក់

ពីគោលបំណងមានពាក្យដូចជា: So that; In order that; In the purpose that; Lest.

EX:

I will give you a map so that you can find the way.

We eat so that we may live.

I use the gun in order that I can protect my self.

The robber had hidden behind the tree lest the police saw him.

I study English in the purpose that I'll be a good professor of English.

5/ Conjunctive Adverb of Frequency.

និយមន័យៈ Conjunctive Adverb of Frequency គឺជាសន្មានក៏រិយាវិសេសប្រើដើម្បីបញ្ជាក់

ពីភាញឹកញាប់មានដូចជាពាក្យថា "How often; How much often.

EX:

How often do you take a bath?

How often did you go home last year?

Please tell me how much often you miss her

He can't remember how much often she says the same sentence.

I don't know how much often he drinks beer.

6/ Conjunctive Adverb of Quantity

និយមន័យ:Conjunctive Adverb of Quantity គឺជាអំបូរនៃសម្ពន្ធកិរិយាស័ព្ទវិសេសម្បាង

ដែលប្រើសំរាប់ដើម្បីបញ្ជាក់អំពីបរិមាណមានពាក្យ "How much"

EX:

I can't say how much I love my girl friend.

Please tell me how much you want from him. He didn't know how much he paid that.

7/ Conjunctive Adverb of Reason or Cause.

និយមន័យ: Conjunctive Adverb of Reason or Cause. គឺជាប្រភេទនៃសម្ព័ន្ធកិរិយាស័ព្ទវិសេ

សដែលប្រព្រិត្តិទៅប្រើដើម្បីបញ្ជាក់អំពីហេតុផល ឬបុព្វហេតុមានពាក្យថា Because; As; Since;

That; Why

EX:

I don't know why my wife said good bye.

He can't imagine why everyone loves that song.

I help you because I like you.

You will be able to explain this since you are well read.

I am glad that you have passed like that.

He will employ me as I swear to serve him faith fully.

8/ Conjunctive Adverb of Condition

និយមន័យ: Conjunctive Adverb of Condition

គឺជាប្រភេទនៃសម្ពុទ្ធកិរិយាវិសេសម្យ៉ាងដែលប្រើដើម្បីបញ្ជាក់ពីលក្ខន្តិក លក្ខខណ្ឌមានពាក្យ ថា

"If; Unless; Whether; or condition that

EX:

If it rains I won't go out tonight.

I won't pay it unless she sits near me.

He will forgive you on condition that you do not repeat the offence.

Whether I give him lots of money he will say truly.

9/ Conjunctive Adverb of Result

និយមន័យ: Conjunctive Adverb of Result គឺជាសន្មានក៏វិយាស័ព្ទវិសេសប្រើដើម្បីបញ្ជាក់

ពីលទ្ធផល ឬ វិបាកនៃកម្មមានពាក្យ That តែញឹកញាប់ណាស់មានពាក្យ So or such

ដែលស្ថិតនៅមុខវាក្នុង Principle clause

EX:

They fought so bravely that the enemy were driven off.

He is such a good man that all respect him.

Angkor Wat was built in such a good way that it is still standing steadily.

10/ Conjunctive Adverb of Comparison

និយមន័យ: Conjunctive Adverb of Place

គឺជាសម្ពន្ធកិរិយាស័ព្ទមួយបែបដែលប្រើសំរាប់បញ្ជាក់ពីការប្រៀបធៀបហើយត្រូវបានលោក អ្នកប្រាជ្ញចែកចេញជាពីរ គឺ

- 1 Conjunctive Adverb of Comparison of Degree.
- 2 Conjunctive Adverb of Comparison Manner.

1 Conjunctive Adverb of Comparison of Degree មាន៣ត្ប Than or as .

EX:

English Grammar

He is older than he lookes.

No one can run faster than Govin.

It is later than she thought.

He is as clever as his father.

She is as white as French.

He is as black as buffalo.

2 Conjunctive Adverb of Comparison of Manner មាន៣ក្បី "As"

EX:

It all ended as I expected.

As you have made the table you can sit on it.

Please do it as I told.

11. Conjunctive Adverb of Supposition or Concession.

និយមន័យ: វាជាសន្មានក៏វិយាវិសេសមួយប្រភេទដែលប្រើសំរាប់បញ្ជាក់ពីការសុាន

ឬការសុខចិត្ត មានពាក្យថា Though; Although; Even if....etc.

EX:

Though he is poor he is honest.

Though the heavens fall; justice must bedom.

I get married her though she is poor.

Even if she works hard she is Ok.

Even if it rains heavy I'll go and see her.

Even if he is old he is able to do a great deal of work.

12. Conjunctive Adverb of Duration

និយមន័យ: វាគឺជាអំបូរនៃសម្ពន្ធកិរិយាវិសេសមួយប្រភេទដែលប្រើសំរាប់បញ្ជាក់ពីកំឡុង

ពេលវេលាមានពាក្យថា "How long"

EX:

You can tell me how long she cooked that food.

Let me know how long you want to stay here.

I remember how long they can sleep there.



3/ Interrogative Adverb

និយមន័យ: Interrogative Adverb គឺជាបុច្ឆន:ក៏វិយាវិសេសដែលមានតួរនាទីសំរាប់ សាកសួរ នូវសំនួរក្នុងប្រយោគទូទៅដែលទាក់ទងទៅនិងទីកន្លែង ពេលវេលា បរិមាណគោលបំណងជាដើម

*នៅក្នុងភាសាអង់គ្លេស Interrogative Adverb ត្រូវបានចែកជាច្រើនជំពូកគឺ :

- 1 Interrogative Adverb of Place
- 2 Interrogative Adverb of Time
- 3 Interrogative Adverb of Manner
- **4 Interrogative Adverb of Purpose**
- 5 Interrogative Adverb of Reason
- **6 Interrogative Adverb of Duration**
- 7 Interrogative Adverb of Quantity

អត្ថាធិប្បាយលើ អត្ថាធិប្បាយ

1 Interrogative Adverb of Place

និយមន័យៈ វាគឺជាបុច្ចនៈកិរិយាវិសេសមួយបែបដែលប្រើសំរាប់បញ្ជាក់ពីកន្លែង មានពាក្យ

Where ជាទូទៅត្រូវបានគេដាក់នៅមុខ Interrogative sentence (Interrogative Adverb)

EX:

Where are you going?

Where do you want to live forever?

Where did they work?

Where are you from?

2 Interrogative Adverb of Time

និយមន័យៈ វាគឺជាបុច្ចនៈកិរិយាស័ព្ទវិសេសមួយអំបូរត្រូវបានគេប្រើដើម្បីបញ្ជាក់ពីពេលវេលា

មានពាក្យថា "When"

EX:

When did you arrive home?

When do we meet a gain?

When do you leave office?

When will you get married?

3 Interrogative Adverb of Manner

និយមន័យៈវាគឺជាបុច្ចនៈក៏រិយាស័ព្ទវិសេស ប្រើសំរាប់បញ្ជាក់ពីលក្ខណមានពាក្យថា "How"

EX:

How can a man be happy will all these worries?

How do you explain the problem?

How can you tell the picture?

How did he go into the building?

4 Interrogative Adverb of Purpose

និយមន័យៈវាគឺជាបុច្ចនៈកិរិយាស័ព្ទវិសេសមួយបែបដែលប្រើសំរាប់បញ្ជាក់ពីគោលបំណង

មានពក្យថា "What for"

EX: What for do you drink beer?

What for did you say that world twice?

What for do you help the rich?

What for do you smoke?

5 Interrogative Adverb of Reason

និយមន័យ: វាជាបុច្ឆន:ក៏រិយាស័ព្ទវិសេសមួយអំបូរប្រើសំរាប់បញ្ជាក់ពីហេតុផលមានពាក្យថា

"Why"

EX: Why does everyone laugh at each other?

Why do you come late everyday?

Why did you do the silly thing?

6 Interrogative Adverb of Duration

និយមន័យៈ វាជាបុច្ចនៈក៏រិយាស័ព្ទវិសេសមួយអំបូរប្រើសំរាប់បញ្ជាក់ពីកំឡុងពេលវេលា

ស្លឹកឈើ

មាន៣ក្ប "How long"

EX: How long do you study English?

How long can you stay still at night time?

How long does it take to get to PP?

7 Interrogative Adverb of Quantity

និយមន័យៈ វាជាបុច្ឆនៈកិរិយាស័ព្ទវិសេសមួយអំបូរប្រើសំរាប់បញ្ជាក់ពីបរិមាណមានពាក្យ "How

much"

EX: How much do you sleep last night?

How much do you love your girlfriend?

How much did you do the work?

The End of Adverbs

PHRASE. IX

និយមន័យ: Phrase គឺជាឃ្លា ឬជាសម្ព័ន្ធពាក្យ ឬជាចង្កោមនៃពាក្យទាំងឡាយដែលមាន ការផ្សំឡើងរវាង Preposition + Noun +Prepotion+Noun+ជាដើមហៅថា Phrase នៅក្នុងភាសាអង់គ្លេស Phrase ចែកជា

- 1 Simple Phrase
- 2 Participle Phrase
- 3 Past Participle Phrase
- **4 Perfect Participle Phrase**



1 Simple Phrase គឺជាចង្ខោមពាក្យដែលមានទំរង់ធម្មតា ពោលគឺ Simple Phrase

កើតឡើងដោយការផ្សំរវាង

Preposition + Noun

Noun + Preposition

EX: Preposition + Noun

We will meet at noun time again.

You can wait for me on next year.

They are coming from Swizerland.

We are working together in the old building.

EX: Noun + Preposition

I love the jewelry of high quality.

They call in a famous doctor from Swizerland.

Mr. Vuthy is a man with thought fullness.

Jack is a teacher with the heart of gold.

Margarette likes a pen of four colors.

Police arrested the thief with the black mask.

ស្លីកឈើ

2 Participle Phrase

និយមន័យ participle phrase គឺជាកន្សោមពាក្យដែលកើតឡើងដោយមាន

Noun + Participle(Ving) + Noun.

EX:

The lady crossing the street is her mother.

I love to see the kids playing soccer.

Police arrested the thief stealing a shoes.

The gentleman walking down the steps is my father-in-law.

Grandpa is sitting with two arms outstretching to the left and right.

The storm blowing so hard yesterday destroyed in English.

3 Past Participle Phrase

និយមន័យ past participle phrase គឺជាសម្ព័ន្ធពាក្យមួយបែបដែលកើតឡើងដោយ

1 Noun + Past participle+ Preposition + Noun

2 Noun+ Past Participle + By + Noun តែទោះជាយ៉ាងណាអត្ថ័យរួមគ្នាតែមួយ

EX: Noun + Past Participle + Preposition + Noun

The watch stolen from the shop is found.

An arrow fired at the bird has dropped over here.

The boat sunk below the Mekong River killed 17 passengers.

EX: Noun + Participle + By + Noun

The doctors are rescuing the kids wounded by land mine.

A child beaten by an assailant has died immediately after being sent to the hospital.

The country protected by its constitute is kept in good order.

Any one bitten by a mad dog should see a doctor.

4 Perfect Participle Phrase

និយមន័យ: Perfect Participle Phrase គឺជាកន្សោមពាក្យដែលមានការរួមផ្សំគ្នារវាង

Noun + Having + Been + Past Participle + By + Noun តែសម្ព័ន្ធនៃពាក្យធ្វើការរួមគ្នា

តែមួយ។

EX:

Any one having been beaten by a mad man should go and see a doctor. Email having been written by me is returned back.

The motor bike having been broken down for many months is repaired.

A person having been arrested by police is the black man.

The girl having been attacked by an assailant is being rescued.

Function of Phrase

🦴 សម្ព័ន្ធនៃពាក្យ (Phrase)ទាំងបួនមានការងារដូចតទៅ

- 1 ដើរតូជាបទប្រធានរបស់ក៏វិយាស័ព្ទ (Subject of Verb)
- 2 ដើរតួជាកម្មបទរបស់ក៏រិយាស័ព្ទ (Object of Verb)

3ដើរតួជាកម្មបទរបស់អាយតនិបាត (Object of Preposition)

4 ដើរតួជាបទបំពេញន័យឱ្យប្រធាន (Subject Complement)

5ដើរត្បូជាគុណនាម (Adjective)

6 ដើរតួជាគុណកិរិយា (Adverb)

1 Noun Phrase ដើរតួជាប្រធានរបស់ក៏វិយាស័ព្ទ

EX:

To win the prize is my ambition

The lady walking across the street is the one does something careful.

The gentle man in the blue uniform is Jackson.

A song having been sung by Koe Sarat drives me cheerful.

2 Phrase ដើរតួជាកម្មបទរបស់ក៏រិយាសព្ទ

EX:

He is going to retake the watch having been stolen from the shop.

They expect to see a lady crossing the bridge.

We enjoy <u>reading this book</u>.

The boy wants to go home.

I tried to get the sum right.

The hope to win the first prize.

The policeman arrested the pick pocket with black mask.

She dislikes to see a man with the mouth stache.

3 Phrase ដើរត្រជា កម្មបទរបស់អាយតនិបាត (Object of Preposition)

EX:

We are listening to the monk telling my theology.

He is having class with professor from Switzerland.

She thinking.

4 Phrase ដើរតួជា (Adjective) ឬ ហៅថា Adjective phrase

សម្ព័ននៃពាក្យទាំងនេះធ្វើការពិពណ៌នា សេចក្តីនៅលើនាម

EX:

She is a young lady with brilliant prosperity.

Siem Reap Angkor becomes a city with large population figures.

He is an old man having been beaten by a group of thugs.

I like to see a face with a smile on it.

The thief lived in a house built of stone.

The magistrate was a man with a kindly nature.

The vizier was a man of great wealth.

We don't have the flag of spain

It is an elephant with a white skin.

5 Phrase ដើរតួដា (Adverb) ឬហៅថា Adverb Phrase

សម្ព័ន្ធនៃពាក្យនេះប្រើបង្ហាញពីទីតាំងនៃសកម្មភាពដែលបានកើតឡើង

English Grammar

EX: Adverb Phrase of Place

The arrow has fallen down at that spot.

The kids are sleeping an the cozy house.

He lies down on the bed.

The birds are to seed about the sky.

Magarette is taking exam at Cambridge university.

EX: Adverb phrase of Time.

The Round-table talk will be held at nine o'clock (AM)

He is still working <u>late at night</u>.

She works through the might.

I am very busy with my clients at this moment.

You can buy it in all places.

E is coming at this very moment.

EX: Adverb of Manner

He answered in a very rude manner. She does her work with out any car. He runs with great speed.



MOOD (man)

និយមន័យ: Mood មាលា គឺជាកំរងប្រយោតឬ ជាទំរងនៃក៏រិយាស័ព្ទដែលបញ្ជាក់នូវលក្ខណ សកម្មភាពឬអាចនិយាយយ៉ាងនេះថា Mood គឺជាវិធីសាស្ត្រនៃការនិយាយស្តី

- *នៅក្នុងភាសាអង់គ្លេស Mood ចែកជាបីប្រភេទគឺ
 - 1 Indicative Mood.
 - 2 Imperative Mood.
 - 3 Subjunctive Mood.

1.1 Indicative Mood (និទស្សន៍មាលា)

និយមន័យ: Indicative Mood គឺជានិស្សន៍មាលាប្រព្រឹត្តទៅប្រើសំរាប់ចង្អួលបង្ហាញឱ្យឈើញ នូវទំលាប់ប្លូលក្ខណៈនៃសកម្មភាពដែលកើតឡើងជាប្រក្រតី ហើយជាទូទៅត្រូវបានគេប្រទះ ឃើញនៅក្នុងយ្រាគស្រប affirmative sentence ឬនៅក្នុងប្រពួគសំនួរ Interrogatvi sentence EX: Affirmative sentence

ស្លឹកឈើ

English Grammar

He writes legibly.

Napoleon died at st.helena.

Magarette generally takes a cold bath every morning.

I do not like to do the work after a big meal.

EX: Interrogative sentence

Have you found your book?

Are you well?

Do you like to drink hot coffee every morning?

Have you visited your parents routinely?

Do you usually go out and have dinner with her?

\star ម្យ៉ាង interrogative Mood ត្រូវបានគេប្រើបញ្ជាក់ពីការស្មានៗផងដែរ

EX:

If it rains heavy; I won't go out tonight.

If she loves me faithfully, I'll go married her.

If my friend wants to kill me, I'll let him kill me at once.

He deserves to be punished if he is the ring-leader.

ចំណាំ Indicative Mood ប្រើបាន ប៊ីយ៉ាងគឺ

1 Statement [S + V + Obj]

2 Question [Auxiliary Verb + S + V + Obj + ?]

3 open conditional

[If + S + V + Obj; S + Wiil/Shall/Might/May + Bare infinitive + Obj]

1.2 Imparative Mood

និយមន័យ: Imparative Mood គឺជាកំរងប្រយោគប្រើបញ្ជាក់ពីការបង្គាប់បញ្ចូ សំណមពរ ការដាស់ក្រើនរំលឹក Command; Exhortation; Request.

1 Command គឺជាការបញ្ហាទៅលើនរនាម្នាក់ឱ្យធ្វើនូវទង្វើណាមួយ

EX:

- -Go out at once
- go away.
- speak up now.
- Tell me your name.
- Kill the black dog

🕮 ពេលខ្លះគេប្រទះឃើញមាលានៃកិរិយាស័ព្ទ Must; Have to ដែរដូចជា

- You must work harder.
- You have to buy it here.

2 Exhortation គឺជាកំរងពាក្យត្រូវបានគេប្រើដើម្បីជំរុញឱ្យឱ្វាទនណាម្នាក់ Exhortation

ជាទូទៅមានលក្ខណដូចគ្នានិង Command ដែរពោលគឺគ្មានបទប្រធានដុចគ្នាគ្រាន់តែខុសគ្នាចំពោះ

Command ត្រង់ថា Exhourtation មិនបង្ខិតបង្ខំ ។

EX:

Be careful

Be steady

Take care of your health.

3 Request ទំរងនេហជាទូទៅតែងតែឃើញពាក្យ "Please" ដែលសំដែងនូវ ការសំណមពរ ក្នុងលក្ខណទន់ភ្លន់ ម្យ៉ាងពាក្យ "Please" ជូនកាលស្ថិតនៅខាងដើមប្រយោធ ជូនកាលស្ថិតនៅខាងចុងប្រយោធ

EX:

Please, try to understand my. Please, do not speak so lould. Come here and check it out, please. Forget everything in the past, please.

4 Imparative Mood គឺជាកំរងពាក្យដែលមានលក្ខណអង្វរករ ឬបួងសួង

EX:

Have mercy upon on us. Give us today our daily food. Have a pity on us. Fell a pity for the poor

3 Subjunctive Mood គឺជាកំរងពាក្យម្យ៉ាង ដែលមានអត្ថន័យសំរាប់តែបញ្ជាក់នូវការបួងសួង ការបន់ស្រន់ សេចក្តីប្រាថ្នា ដែលយើងមិនអាចកំនត់បាននូបភាពជាក់លាក់

នោក្នុងភាសាអង់គ្លេស subjunctive Mood ចែកជាពីរប្រភេទគឺ

- 1 present subjunctive Mood
- 2 past subjunctive Mood
- 1 Present subjunctive Mood បញ្ជាក់ពីការបួងសួង បន់ស្រន់ ប្រាថ្នា

EX:

God bless you! God save my family! Heaven help our love.

* ម្យ៉ាង Present subjunctibe Mood មានលក្ខណយាំងនេះដែរ

EX:

other verbs
I say.
We say.
You say.
They say.
He say.
She say.

EX:

I suggest that he be punctual. my wife order that we be happy.

\star ម្យ៉ាងឡើតត្រូវបានគេប្រើជាមួយ Auxiliary verb "May"

Form [May + S + Bare infinitive + Obj!]

EX:

May my dream come true!

May I get married soon!

May she love in good condition!

2 Past subjunctive Mood

និយមន័យ Past subjunctive Mood

គឺជាកំរងពាក្យដែលត្រូវបានគេចងក្រងឡើងដើម្បីបញ្ជាក់នូវស្ថានភាពពីរយ៉ាងគឺ:

- ១ បញ្ជាក់ពីការសោកស្ដាយ (Regret)
- ២ បញ្ជាក់ពីន័យបដីសេធ(Implies negative sentence)

១ បញ្ជាក់ពីការសោកស្ដាយ (Regret)

Form [S + Wish + S + V2 + Obj] និយាយពីបច្ចុប្បន្នភាព

EX:

I wish I did not have a car = I'm sorry that I have a car.

I wish I stayed in PP= I'm sorry that I don't stay in PP.

I wish I had a million pounds = I'm sorry that I don't have a million pounds.

I wish I were a king =I'm sorry that I'm not a king.

Form [S + Wish + S + Had +VV3+ Obj]បញ្ជាក់ពីអតីពកាល

EX:

I wish I had known her name= I'm sorry that I didn't know her name.

I wish I had brought my camera with=I'm sorry that I didn't bring my camera.

I wish she had not got married=I'm sorry that she got married.

2 Past subjunctive Mood implies negative sentence.

ជាការប្រើប្រាស់ដោយភ្ជាប់ពាក្យ if ដើម្បីបញ្ជាក់បីភាពមិនពិតក្នុងបច្ចុប្បន្ន

 $Form \ [\ If + S + Verb\ past\ (Were) + ; + I + Would/Should/Could/Might + V_1 + Obj] \\ EX:$

If I were a king; you would be a queen.

If I were you; I could not do that.

If we started now; we would be in time.

If I were a professor; I would get married.

3 Past subjunctive Mood implies negative sentence.

Form [$S + V_1 + Obj + As \text{ if } / As \text{ though } + S + V_2 + Obj$] EX:

He walk like that as though he were drunk.

She uses my about as if I were her husband.

You talk a lot as if you were Prime minister.

4 Past subjunctive Mood implied negative sentence

Form [If only $+ S + V_2 + Obj$] បញ្ជាក់ន័យបច្ចុប្បន្ន

EX:

If only I knew her address=I'm sorry that I don't know her address.

If only he lived in city=I'm sorry that he doesn't live in city.

Form [If only + S + Had + V₃ + Obj]បញ្ជាក់ន័យអតីតកាល

EX:

If only I had known her home=I'm sorry that I'm didn't know her home. If only she killed the black animal=I'm sorry that she didn't kill that black animal.

If only Tom had been here= I'm sorry that Tom was not here.

5 Past subjunctive Mood

ប្រើបញ្ជាក់ពីការស្រឡាញ់ជាងឬចូលចិត្តជាង

Form [S + Would rather + Subject + V_2 + Obj] EX:

I would rather you went by air= I would prefer you to go by air.

They would rather you paid by cheque=

They would prefer you to pay by cheque.

She would rather I worked in the night time.

My father would rather she stayed in the separate house.

My father would prefer her to stay in the separate house.



UNIT. XI SENTENCE rutun

និយមន័យ: Sentence គឺជាវោហាស័ព្ទដែលត្រូវបានគេចងក្រងជាសេចក្តីថ្លែងការណ៍ ប្រយោជន៍ដើម្បីទំនាក់ទំនងពី មនុស្សម្នាក់ទៅមនុស្សម្នាក់ទៀត។ នៅក្នុភាសាអង់គ្លេស Sentence ត្រូវបានគេចែកដូចតទៅ

- 1 Simple Sentence
- 2 Compound Sentence
- 3 Complex Sentence

1 Simple Sentence

និយមន័យ: Simple Sentence គឺជាប្រយោគមួយអំបូរជាទូទៅវាមានបទប្រធានមួ និង បរិវាស័ព្ទមួយ តែភាគច្រើនគេប្រទះឃើញថា Simple Sentenceគឺមាន Finite Verb មួយម៉ង់១ EX:

The moon is bright; tonight.

We can see each other.

We must eat to live every day.

His silence proved his quilt.

I work hard to be a good professor of English.

She is a beautiful girl the village.

He always phones her on Sunday.

I promise to live with my wife forever.

ស្លីកឈើ

She likes my book.

2/ Compound Sentence / Double Sentence

និយមន័យ: Compound Sentence គឺជាសមាសប្រយោគម្យ៉ាងដែលមានប្រយោគចំបង (Main

Clause) ពីរ ឬច្រើនជាងពីរភ្ជាប់ដោយ Co-ordinating Conjunction ។

EX:

He must work very hard and make up for the last time.

The boy was disobey dent and so the teacher punish idea him.

He work hard yet did not succeed.

The robber must not attempt to escape or he will be put to death.

He not only robberies the poor boy but also killed the rich.

God made the country and man made the town.

He is slow but he is sure.

He is rich yet he is not happy.

Walk quickly else you won't over take him.

Some praise the work and some the beautiful girls.

(អ្នកខ្លះសសើរការងារ អ្នកខ្លះសសើរស្រីស្អាត)

3/ Complex Sentence

និយមន័យ: Complex Sentence គឺជាមិស្សភាគប្រយោគពោលគឺអំបូរនៃប្រយោគនេះ

ជាទូទៅតែងមានលក្ខណលាយឡំដោយ Noun clause; Adjective clause; Adverb clause; ។ EX:

He said that he was innocent.

It is pity that he can't come back again.

He confessed that he was quality.

My belief is that he is not our friend any more.

I dream that I swam in the river with her.

Complex Sentence ដែលលាយចំរុះដោយ Adjective clause

EX:

He died in the village where he was born.

The moment which is lost is lost for ever.

The place where Buddha was cremated has recently been discovered.

I have no advice that I can offer you.

The book which I want is on the table.

The son who was his special pride in his old age is dead.

ចូរពិនិត្យ Complex Sentence ដែលលាយចំរុះដោយ Adverb clause

EX:

You can talk as much as you like.

Every thing comes if a man will only work and wait.

He will not pay unless he is compelled.

When the eat is away the mice will play happily.

He was so tired that he couldn't stand up.

While there is life there is hope.

As you sow; so you will reap.

If I will make a promise I keep it.

I was surprised when I heard her voice by phone.

ស្លឹកឈើ

The End of Sentence

UNIT. XII CLAUSE

និយមន័យ: Clause គឺជាប្រព័ន្ធនៃប្រយោគស្មុកស្មាញ ដែលត្រូវបានគេកសាងឡើងដោយ ប្រយោគសំខាន់ ឬប្រយោគឯករាជ (Independent Sentence) រូមផ្សំគ្នាជាមួយអនុប្រយោគ (Dependent Sentence) ជាទូទៅតែងនាំមុខដោយ Relative words= Who; Whom; Which; What; Whose; When; Where; Why; How ឬ ដឹកនាំដោយ Subordinating conjunction ដូចជា

Before; After; As; While ជាដើម

- 🖑 នៅក្នុងភាសាអង់គ្លេស Clause ត្រូវបានគេចែកជាប៊ីជំពូកគឺ
 - 1 Noun Clause
 - 2 Adjective Clause
 - 3 Adverb Clause

1. Noun Clause

គឺជាប្រយោគមានលក្ខណៈដូចជានាម ពោលគឺ Noun Clause អាជដើរទូរជា

- A/ Noun Clause can be the Subject of a Verb.
- B/ Noun Clause can be the Object of a Transitive Verb.
- C/ Noun Clause cab be the Complement of a Verb of Incomplete predication.
- D/ Noun Clause can be in Apposition to a Noun or Pronoun.
- E/ Noun Clause can be the Object of Preposition.

A/ Noun Clause can be the Subject of a Verb. ដើរតួរជាប្រធាននៃក៏វិយាស័ព្ទ EX:

Why he did is a mystery.

What you said has surprised me.

That it would rain seemed likely.

Where he plans to do seems to be difficult.

When she would come back is very uncertain.

How he tackled that problem sounded so simple.

B/ Noun Clause can be the Object of a Transitive Verb.

ពេល Noun Clause ត្រូវបានគេប្រើជាកម្មបទរបស់ក៏វិយាស័ព្ទ ជាទូទៅ Subordinate Clause

ស្លឹកឈើ

ចាំបាច់ត្រូវឈរនៅខាងក្រោយក៏រិយាស័ព្ទមួយចំនួន ដូចជា :Dream; Ask; Request; Say; Hear;

Believe; Hope; Understand; Tell; Uniform; Explain; Think ...etc ដែល Subordinate

Clause ទាមនេះទទួលឥទ្ធិពលពីក៏វិយាស័ព្ទទាំងនេះ ។

EX:

He dreamt that he was flying to the moon.

Hob said that he was very hungry.

I think that it will not rain by five o'clock (PM).

He explain that the world characterizes as the ball.

I believe that to do good is to receive good result.

They hope that every thing is ok.

C/ Noun Clause cab be the Complement of a Verb of Incomplete Predication. IMI

Noun Clause ដើរតួជាបទបំពេញន័យនោះដោយគ្រាន់តែដាក់ Subordinate Clause

ឱ្យឈរនៅក្រោយក៏រិយា Tobe សំរាប់បំពេញន័យឱ្យក៏រិយាស័ព្ទ

EX:

My belief is that she doesn't come on expected time.

Her intention is that he is able to see my off the air port.

His willingness is that he can get equal benefit.

D/ Noun Clause can be in Apposition to a Noun or Pronoun.

ដើរត្តជានាមបង្រ្គប់ន័យលើនាម ឬ សព្ទនាម

EX:

Will not be believed at all.

His belief <u>that some day he would succeed</u> Cheered him through many disappointments.

You must never forget this; that honesty is the best policy.

It was unlucky that you were absent.

E/Noun Clause can be the Object of Preposition. ដើរតួរជាកម្មបទរបស់អាយតនិបាត EX:

Pay careful attention to what I am going to say.

There is no meaning in what you say.

There were no complaints except that the day was too hot.

2. ADJECTIVE CLAUSE

និយមន័យ: Adjective Clause គឺជាប្រភេទនៃអនុប្រយោគប្រព្រិត្តទៅមានលក្ខណ:ដូច Adjective ដែរ ដោយប្រើ Subordinate Clause សំរាប់ប្រាប់នូវរឿងរ៉ាវអំពី Noun ដែលឈរនៅមុខវា EX:

She is a girl whose father was killed.

He is a man who saved my life.

The book which I want is on the table.

The man whom I love is smart.

That is Mr Priestley who teachers Hob English.

The boy who is crying is very hungry.

He is the boy who broke the glass.

3. Adverb Clause

និយមន័យ: Adverb Clause គឺជាក្រុមនៃពាក្យដែលមានបទប្រធាននិងបរិវាស័ព្ទផ្ទាល់ខ្លួន របស់វា ដែលប្រព្រិត្តដើម្បីធ្វើការរ៉ាយរាប់រៀបរាប់ពីលក្ខណៈផ្សេងៗរបស់ក៏រិយាស័ព្ទ ឱ្យកាន់តែច្បាស់ថែមទៀត ក្នុង Main Clause ។ នៅក្នុងភាសាអង់គ្លេស Adverb Clause ចែកជាច្រើនជំពូកគឺ:

- 1 Adverb Clause of time
- 2 Adverb clause of Place
- 3 adverb clause of purpose
- 4 Adverb clause of cause or Reason
- 5 Adverb clause of condition.
- 6 Adverb clause of Result
- 7 Adverb clause of comparation.
- 8 Adverb clause of supposition or concession.
- 9 Adverb clause of Manner.
- 1 Adverb Clause of Time

និយមន័យៈ Adverb Clause of Time គឺជាអំបុរនៃអនុប្រយោគមួយបែបជាទូទៅ Subordinate

Adversb ដ្ឋីចំរ៉ោ When; Whenever; While; After; Before; Since as. As long as; As soon as

...etc ដែលពាក្យទាំងនេះមានការងារសំរាបប្រាប់ពីសកម្មភាពនៃពេលវេលា។

EX:

When you read this book you may like it.

They can go out whenever they have enough money.

He eats while he drinks beer.

He heard the good news as long as he wrote me.

Do it before you forget.

He has not been fine since he returned from home.

2 Adverb Clause of Place.

និយមន័យ: Adverb Clause of Place គឺជាប្រភេទនៃអនុប្រយោគម្យ៉ាងដែលបញ្ជាក់ពីពេល

វេលា ដោយមាន Subordinate Conjunction ដូចជា Where; Wherever ។

EX:

They can stay where they are.

English Grammar

You can put it wherever you like.

Let him be arrested wherever he may be found.

I want to live where my girlfriend lives.

3 Adverb Clause of Purpose

និយមន័យ: Adverb Clause of Purpose គឺជាអំបូរ នៃអនុប្រយោគដែលមាន Subordinate

Conjunction ដូចជា So that; In order that; In purpose that; Les.

EX:

I will give you a map so that you can fire the way.

I try to study English in purpose that I ca be a good teacher.

He helps her in order that she supports him back soon.

She likes to stay in the forest lest she is a friend of tiger.

4 Adverb Clause of Cause or Reason.

និយមន័យ³ Adverb Clause of Cause or Reason គឺជាអនុប្រយោគម្យ៉ាងដែលដឹកមុខដោយ

Subordinate conjunction because; For. As since. That

EX: I help you because I feel pity for you mother.

Gob didn't puss the examination as he didn't work hard.

I am glad that you take it.

They bring some bread for lots of people can't rice.

You can explain away for that since you are dishonest man.

5 Adverb Clause of Condition

និយមន៍: Adverb Clause of Condition គឺជាអនុប្រយោគម្យ៉ាងបញ្ជាក់ពីលក្ខ័ណ្ឌដោយមាន

Subordinate Conjunction ដូចជា If; Whether, Unless, On condition that

EX: If I stop raining soon I'll go and see you.

You must go whether you hear from him or not.

Unless you work harder; you will fail.

I will forgive you on condition that you do not repeat the offence.

ចំណាំ: ពាក្យ Whether ដែលដើរតួជា Subordinate Conjunction ព្រែថា ទោះជា

a Adverb Clause of Result

និយមន័យៈ វាជាអនុប្រយោគមួយអំបុរដែលមាន Subordinate Conjunction ដូចជា that

ជាទូទៅមានពាក្យ So or Such នៅក្នុង Principle Clause

EX: She is such a beautiful girl that a lot of boys love her.

He spoke in such a low voice that few could hear him.

Rain fell very heavy that the rivers wear full of water.

7 Adverb Clause of Comparation

និយមន័យ: វាគឺជាអនុប្រយោគម្យ៉ាងដែលមាន Subordinate ដូចជា Than or Relative Adverb

as

EX: He is older than he looks.

It was later that I thought.

It will happen as sure as death.

8 Adverb Clause of Concession or Supposition.

ស្លឹកឈើ

និយមន័យ: វាជាអនុប្រយោគមួយបែបដែលមាន Subordinating Conjunction ដូចជា Though;

All though; Even if.

EX: Though I am poor I am honest.

He sets sail although the storm threatens.

I must get married her even if she lives afar away.

9 Adverb Clause of Manner

និយមន័យ: វាគឺជាអំបូរនៃអនុប្រយោគដែលមាន Subordinate Conjunction ដូចជា As if . As though...etc.

EX:

The black dog barked like that as if his heart would break.

He could do better and better as though many people helped him.

He speaks as if he is the prime minister of Cambodia.



UNIT XIII

CONDITIONALS

និយមន័យៈ វាគឺជាប្រភេទនៃសំដីមួយបែបដែលស្ថិតក្នុងលក្ខខ័ណ្ឌ ជាទូទៅវាត្រូវបានគេប្រទះ ឃើញថា សកម្មភាពខ្លះអាចកើត ឯសកម្មភាពខ្លះទៀតមិនកើតឡើង ទាល់តែសោះ (គ្រាន់តែស្រមែ)

- នៅក្នុងភាសាអង់គ្លេស Conditionsal ត្រូវបានគេចែកជាបីបែបគឺ
 - 1 Open Conditional. (Type 1)
 - 2 Improbable or Imaginary Conditional. (Type 2)
 - 3 Unfulfilled Conditional (Type 3)

1 Open Conditional

និយមន័យ: Open Conditional គឺជាប្រភេទនៃលក្ខខ័ណ្ឌបើកចំហរមានន័យថា

បើសិនសកម្មាពទាំងឡាយណាត្រូវបានគេធ្វើវានិងកើតឡើង តែបើមិនបានគេធ្វើទេនោះ

វាក៏មិនអាចកើតឡើងបានដែរ ឬអាចនិយាយថាបើគេធ្វើបាន បើមិនធ្វើអត់

if clause

Main clause

 $\label{eq:form} \textbf{Form} \; [\; If + S + V + Obj +, + s + Will/Shall/May/Can + V + Obj \;] \\ EX:$

If you have good a job, you will help your family.

If she works hard, she can pass exam.

If you tell me the true story, I will help you exactly.

If they read this books, they will know English grammar.

If she loves me, I cam get married her.

If you drink tea, you may pay less money.

If you dirnk beer, you will pay more money.

If I see the black monkey, I will kill it.

2 Improbable or Imaginary Conditional

និយមន័យ វាគឺជាអំបូរនៃលក្ខខ័ណ្ឌមួយបែប ជាទូទៅត្រូវបានគេប្រទះឃើញថា វាល់សកម្ម ភាពដែលគេនិយាយនោះមិនកើតឡើងទេ (ត្រឹមតែថា មិនបានធ្វើ) ប្ញអាចនិយាយថា ជាប្រភេទសំដីស្រមើលស្រមៃ ។

$$\begin{tabular}{ll} \hline & if clarse & Main clause \\ \hline Form: [If + S + V_2 + Obj + , + S + Would/ Should/ Might/ Could + V_1 + Obj] \\ \hline \end{tabular}$$

EX: If I were you, I wouldn't do that.

If I had much money, I would buy a new car.

If the great Koe Sarat were a live, he could sing many songs.

If I were King, you would be queen.

3 Unfulfilled Conditional

និយមន័យ វាគឺជាប្រយោគមួយបែបនៃ Conditional ដែលត្រឹមតែថា តែមិន្យ៉ានអនុវត្តន៍ ទាំងស្រុង មានន័យថារាល់សកម្មភាពដែលគេនិយាយ 100% មិនកើតឡើងទេ ។

Form [If + S + Had + V₃ + Obj+, + S + Would/ Should/ Could/ Might + Hav + V₃ + Obj] EX: If my grand ma had been alive, I could have drunk tea withher. If she had read my book, she would have praised me. If I had veen married her, I would have been happier. If he had veen rich, we wouldn't have helped him. If I had been a professor, I might have killed you at once. If the sun rises at the west, we would havebelieved you.

ចំណាំ ស្បើវភៅខ្លះនិយាយផ្សេងគ្នារវាង ឈ្មោះ conditional ទាំងប៊ីនេះ ពោលគឺត្រង់ចំនុច (Type1) ហៅដូចគ្នា "Open Conditional" ត្រង់ចំនុច (Type2) ឈ្មោះផ្សេងគ្នាគឺគេហៅថា "Present Conditional" ត្រង់ចំនុច (Type 3) ឈ្មោះផ្សេងគ្នាគឺគេហៅថា "Past Conditional." ហើយពិសេសថែមទៀតនោះ Present Conditional and Past Conditional ត្រូវបានគេទទួលស្គាល់ ជាផ្លូវការថា ជាកូនរបស់ Subjunctive យ៉ាងពិត ។ តែទោះជាយាងណាហៅមួយណាក៏គ្មានបញ្ហាអីទេ គ្រាន់តែថាយើងបានស្គាល់ឈ្មោះច្រើន ។

The End of the conditional UNIT XIV

TENSE

និយមន័យ Tense គឺជាកាលនៃក៏រិយាស័ព្ទប្រព្រឹត្តទៅដើម្បីចង្អល់បង្ហាញនូវពេលវេលានៃសកម្ម ភាព ប្រព្រិត្តិការណ៍ ម្យ៉ាងទៀត Tense នេះមានដើមកំនើតមកពីពាក្យឡាតាំង (Tensepus) មានន័យស្ញើនិងភាសាអង់គ្លេស Time ។

- *នៅក្នុងភាសាអង់គ្លេស Tense ត្រូវបានគេចែកជា ប៊ី ធំ ១គឺ
 - 1 Simple Past Tense
 - 2 Simple Present Tense
 - **3 Future Tense Simple Future Tense**

1 Simple Past Tense

និយមន័យ Simple Past Tense អតីតកាល គឺជាកាលនៃក៏រិយាស័ព្ទដែលប្រព្រិត្តិទៅសំរាប់ចង្អល់ បង្ហាញនូវព្រិត្តិការណ៍ទាំងឡាយដែល កន្លងទៅហួសទៅហើយ ។

Past Tense ចែកជា ៣ ជំពូកគឺ

- 1 Simple Past Tense.
- 2 Past Continuous Tense.
- 3 Past Peafect Tense.
- *រប្បើបប្រឹប្រាស់ Simple Past Tense (អតីតកាលធម្មតា)
- 1.1 **Simple past Tense** ប្រើដើម្បីចង្អល់បង្ហាញនូវសកម្មភាពដែលត្រូវបានគេបំពេញចទៅ ហើយ ជាទូទៅត្រូវបានគេប្រទះឃើញមាន Adverb of time or Adverb phrase of

past time ស្ថិតនៅជាមួយក្នុងកាលនេះ

Form [
$$S + V_2 + Obj + Adverb$$
 of past tene]

EX:

She left school last year

He recieved my SMS a week ago.

We bought the car yesterday.

1.2 **Simple Past Tense** ប្រើសំរាប់ទំលាប់ក្នុងអតីតដូច (Used to) ដែរ ។

Form [
$$S + V_2 + Obj + Adverb$$
 of past time] EX:

I wrot for many hours every night.

He studied English with a great teacher.

She walked to school every day.

She always carried an umbrella to market.

My brother drank wine so much before getting married.

1.3 Simple Past Tense ជាធម្មតាយើងតែងតែប្រើ Adverb of time ភ្ជាប់ជាមួយសកម្មភាព ដែល កន្លងទៅ តែមិនមែនសំរាប់ទំលាប់ក្នុងអតីតទេ ពោលគឺ សកម្មភាពក្នុងអតីត ធម្មតា យើងមិនចាំបាច់ប្រើ Adverb of time ក៏បានដែរ តែចាំបាច់ត្រូមានបរិបទពោលគឺ ត្រូវមានឃ្លាដែល កើតឡើងក្នុងប្រយោគនេះដែរ ។

EX:

Babar defeated his foes at Kanwaha He studied English In Nang Pur. She worked at Phom Penh.

📤 Past Continuous Tense (អតីតកាលកំពង់បន្ត)

និយមន័យ Past Continuous Tense គឺកាលមួយអំបូដែលប្រើសំរាប់ចង្អល់បង្ហាញនូវព្រិត្តិការណ៍ ដែលកំពង់បន្តក្នុអតីតកាល ។

ករណីទី ១ Past Continuous Tense ប្រើចង្អល់បង្ហាញនូវសកម្មភាពដែលបន្តក្នុងអតីតកាល
ម្យ៉ាងទីតាំងពេលវេលានៃសកម្មភាពអាចត្រូវបានគេបញ្ជាក់ ឬមិនត្រូវបានគេបញ្ជាក់ ។
Form [S + Tobe + (Was/ Were + V ing + Obj + (Adverb of Past Time)]
EX:

We were listening to teh radio all evening.

It was getting darker.

He was working hard before.

I was living in Kos Koe Pagoda.

ករណីទី 2 Past Continuous Tense ប្រើរួមជាមួយSimple past Tense ចំពោះសកម្មភាពដែល កើតឡើងក្នុងអតីតកាលជាទូទៅត្រូវបានគេប្រទះឃើញថារាល់សកម្មភាពថ្មី គឺត្រូវ បានគេប្រើ Simple Past ។

EX:

The light went out while I was writing. When I saw her she was cooking. I was watching T.Vwhen talked louldly. He was sleeping while they played the quite.

ការណ៍ទី 3 Past Continuous Tense ្រើ្រជាមួយពាក្យ Always, Continually .

EX:

I was always thinking of my girlfriend. He was continually living in the country. We were always working hard in our young day. He was always grumbling.

ករណីទី 4 Past Continuous Tense ប្រើសំរាប់សកម្មភាពដែលកើតឡើងព្រមគ្នា ឬ តំណាលគ្នា មានន័យ សកម្មភាពពីអតីតៈឡើងក្នុងពេលតែមួយគ្នុងអតីត ។ EX:

We were drinking beer while she was complaining her hasband.

I was walking while she was dancing.

He was reading while she was listening radio.

We was working and she was singing in the afternoun.

She was doing the shopping and walking the day last week.

I running the horse and seeing the pretty grils.

3 Past Perfect Tense

និយមន័យ past perfect tense អតីតកាលបរិបូរណ៍ ជាប្រភេទកាលមួយអំបុរដែលត្រូវបានគេ ប្រើសំរាប់ចង្អល់បង្ហាញទីតាំងនៃសកម្មភាព ដែលចប់សព្វគ្រាប់ហើយក្នុងអតីត: ។

ករណីទី 1 Past perfect tense ប្រើធ្វើការអធិប្បាយនូវសកម្មភាពដែលកើតឡើងក្នុងអតីតៈ ដែលត្រុវបានគេបំពេញមុនពេលវេលាជាក់លាក់ក្នុងអតីតៈ ជាទូទៅត្រូវបានគេ ប្រទះឃើញថា សកម្មភាពទី ១ ត្រូវប្រើ Past perfect tense ឯវិសកម្មភាព ដទៃទៀតទ្រូវប្រើ Simple ast.

Form $[S + Had + V_3 + Obj]$ EX:

She had finished her home work before she watched T.V.

He had saved the child before the police arrived.

The phone rang after she had gone away.

My family had been rich before my father was ill.

I had done my execise when my friend came to see me.

I had written the letter before he arrived.

Before I got married, I had been a professor of English.

When I reached the station the train had started.

ការណ៍ទី ២ Past perfect tense ប្រើសំរាប់ Indirect speech.

EX:

He said = "I have spoken English with her" He said that he had spoken English with her.

Hop said= "I have been Angkor Wat".

Hop said that He had been Angkor WAt.

ករណីទី 3 Past perfect tense ប្រើសំរាប់ Past conditional type 3

ដែលប្រព្រិត្តិទៅបញ្ជាក់ពីភាពអវិជ្ជមាន ។

EX:

If I had known her I would have called her at once.

If we had found him earlier we could have saved his life.

If my documents had been in order we might have left.

4 Past Perfect continuous Tense

និយមន័យ វាគឺជាអំបុរនៃកាលមួយបែបដែលជាទូទៅតែងតែចង្អល់បង្ហាញ្សូវសកម្មភាព ដែលប្រព្រិត្តិបន្តយ៉ាងបរិបុរណ៍ក្នុងអតីតៈដែលមានការប្រើប្រាស់ដូចតទៅ

ការណីទី 1 Past perfect continuous tense ប្រើសំរាប់សកម្មភាពដែលបានចាប់ផ្តើមមុន

ចំនុចពេលជាក់លាក់ក្នុងអតីតៈ ហើយបន្តរហូតមកដល់ពេលបច្ចុប្បន្ន ។

Form [S + Had + Been + Ving + Obj +.....]

When my wife came, my son had been sleeping for alongtime.

He had been reading his lasson when I called to him.

Whe I went to P.P in 2010, she had been living there for 1 year.

When he learning English in 2010 Mr. Voha cheat had been teaching it for five years.

I was tired because I had been driving all days.

They had been watching T.V when the light went out.

She had been writing for 2 hours when I arrived.

ការណីទី 2 Past perfect continuous tense ប្រើសំរាប់សកមភាពកើតម្តងហើយម្តងឡើត

ដែលកំពង់តែបន្តក្នុងអតីត: ។

EX:

I had been trying to get my girl friend on the phone.

He had been complaining his children for hours.

She had been listening the rocking song.

ចំណាំ ក៏វិយាស័ព្ទទាំងឡាយមិនគួប្រើជាមួយ Past perfect continuous tense មាន

Want, Wish, Like, Love, Hate, Need, Prefer, Know, Realise, Suppose, Consist, Depent and, Relieve, Remember, Belong, Contain, Depend. Seem.

2 Present Tense (បច្ចប្បន្ន)

និយមន័យ វាគឺកាលមួយអំបូរដែលប្រើសំរាប់ចង្ងល់បង្ហាញនូវព្រឹត្តិការណ៍ទាំងឡាយ

ក្នុងពេល ឥឡូវ ។នៅក្នុងភាសាអង់គ្លេស Simple present tense ចែកជា 4 គឺ

- 1 Simple Pesent Tense
- **2 Present Continuous Tense**
- 3 Present Perfect Tense.
- **4 Present Perfect Continuouse Tense.**

1.2 Simple Present Tense ប្រើសំរាប់សកម្មភាពជាទំលាប់ក្នុងពេលបច្ចុប្បន្ន/ឥឡូវ ។

Form [$S + V_1 + Obj.....$]

EX:

My father drinks tea every day.

I get up every day at 6: 30 AM.

My watch keeps good time.

1 Simple present tense ប្រើសំរាប់សកម្មភាពទាំងឡាយណាដេលតែងតែពិតឬពិតជាទូទៅ ។

EX:

The sun rises in the east.

Honey is sweet.

Forture favours the brave.

The sun sets down in the west.

The earth moves round the sun.

Honesty is the best policy.

ការណីទី 2.3 Simple Present Tense ប្រើក្នុង Exdamatory Sentenus ដែលចាប់ផ្តើមជា

មួយពាក្យ Here and There ដើម្បីបញ្ជាក់នូវអ្វីដែលកើតឡើងពិតប្រាកដក្នុង

ពេលបច្ចុប្បន្ន ។

EX:

Here comes the bus! = the bus is coming here.

There she goes!.

There the bus stops!.

Look! How well he speaks!.

What a good son you have!

How beautiful she is!

ការណីទី ២.៣ Simple Present Tense ប្រើសំរាប់ពណ៌នារឿងរ៉ាវដែលស្ថិតនៅក្នុងអតីត

ដោយចង់ឱ្យសេចក្តីនោះនៅរស់រវើក ប្រើកាលនេះជូស Simple Past Tense.

EX:

My friend now rustes forward and deals a heavy blow.

His wife immedietey he comes to his homeland.

Once upon a time there is a satan with 8 heads flying ever Phnom Penh.

ការណីទី ២.៤ Simple Present Tense ប្រើសំរាប់ព្រឹត្តិការណ៍ក្នុងអនាគតដែលជាផ្នែកនៃកម្ម

វិធីដែលគេរៀបចំកំនត់ ឬ កាលវិភាគដែលគេកំនត់ ។

EX:

The train leaves at 7:00 (AM).

The match starts at 9:00 (AM).

The next flight is at 7:30 tomorrow morning.

I get married nixt year.

My wedding's day comes next year.

ករណីទី ២. ៥ Simple Present Tense ប្រើដើម្បីបង្ហាញនូវសំដឹងកស្រង់ ។

EX:

He says = "love is blind".

My father says = "A thing of beautiful is a joy forever".

ក្សាស៊ីទី ២. ៦ Simple Present Tense ប្រើជំនួស Simple Future Tense ក្នុងនោះត្រូវ

គេប្រទហ៖ឃើញ Clauses of Time and of Condition ចូលរួមដែរ ។

EX:

I'll wait for you, dear until you finish your study.

We'll see her at the pasty when he brings her with.

When he get married he will be a good husband.

If it rains we get wet.

If you walk you'll reach there.

If we sleep here we'll be here for our lives.

ការណីទី ២.៧ Simple Present Tense ប្រើចំពោះជំណងជើងកាសែត

(Newspaper headlines) 4

EX:

Peace talks fail.

Prime mister warng the corruted offical.

Five policemen rapes a black morr.

ចំណាំ ប្រយោគទាំងនេះជាឈ្មោះចំនងជើងនៃកាសែត។

ការណីទី ២.៨ Simple Present Tense ្រើជាមួយ Adverb or Adver Clause ដូចជា Always,

Usually, Often, Occasionally, Ever, Never, Sometime, Every day, Every week, Every year, Once a year, Twice a year, etc.

EX:

I always miss my parents.

He usually calls to her.

She often watches T.V after dinner.

I go home once a year.

My son go to school every day.

My daughter teaches English every week.

2 Present Continuous Tense (បច្ចុប្បន្នកាលកំពង់បន្ត)

និយមន័យ Present Continuous Tense គឺជាអំបូរនៃកាលកំពង់បន្តក្នុងពេលបច្ចុប្បន្ន ដែល មានការប្រើប្រាស់ដូចតទៅ

ការណីទី 9 Present Continuous Tense ប្រើសំរាប់សកម្មភាពដែលកំពង់តែកើតឡើងក្នុង

ពេលបច្ចុប្បន្ន កំពង់និយាយ ធ្វើ.....

Form [S + Tobe + Ving + Obj] EX:

The boys are playing hockey.

I'm listening radio.

He is making money for his family \(^1\)

ករណីទី ២ Present Continuous Tense ប្រើសំរាប់សកម្មភាពបណ្ដេះអាសន្ន មានន័យថា

សកម្មភាពមិនអាចកើតឡើងក្នុងពេលកំពង់និយាយ ក៏មិនជាទាស់អី ។

EX: My children are reading English grammar.

He is watching T V មានន័យថា គាត់កំពង់មើលTV តែក្នុងពេលនោះគាត់អាច

ទៅនិយាយទូរសព្ទ មួយខណៈពេល

She is cooking for her family.

I am writing sms (Short method system) to her.

ករណីទី ៣ Present Continuous Tense ប្រើសំរាប់សកម្មភាពដែលត្រូវបានគេរៀបចំឡើង

ដើម្បីឱ្យកើតក្នុងអនាគតដ៏ខ្លី ជាទូទៅត្រូវបានគេប្រទះឃើញថាតែងអមដោយ Adverb of future time.

EX:

We are visiting Angkor wat on Sunday. She is coming home in the next summer. He is speaking English fluently soon. I am getting married in Jun 10th ,2010. My friend is making his business in 10th Jun , 2010 Jaya is singing at the concert this week. They are working for the organization this April.

ករណីទី ៤ Present Continuous Tense ត្រូវបានគេប្រឹសំរាប់ សកម្មភាពដែលពិបាកកែ
ប្ញសកម្មភាពដែលចចេស មានន័យថាវាកើតម្ដងហើយម្ដងទៀត ជាទូទៅចំពោះ
សកម្មភាព ទាំងឡាយជាទមលាប់យើងប្រើប្រាស់ Simple Present Tense
តែទោះជាយ៉ាងណាក៏ដោយ និយាយទៅលើការឱ្យឱ្យវាទ. ការប្រមាន យើងប្រើ
Present Continuous Tense ជំនួសសំរាប់សកម្មភាពជាទំលាប់ ដែលអមដោយពាក្យ
Always, Continuolly, Constantly.

EX:

My dog is so stupid; he is always running out in to the road. Mr Coca is an annoying quest, he is xontinuolly complaining about the hot weather. I am constantly finding my lovely pen.

ចំណាំ ពពួកកិរិយាស័ព្ទមួយអំបូរត្រូវបានគេច្យេសវាងមិនប្រើក្នុង Present Continuouse

មានដូចជា Like, Love, Hate, Want, Need, Prefer, Know, Realise, Suppose, Mean, Understand, Believe, Remember, Belong, Contain, Consist, Depend, Seem, See, Hear, Smell, Taste, Own, Forget, Imagine, Mind, Agree, Wish, Desire, Feel, Hope, Frfuse, Trust, Notice, Recognize.

ចូលសង្កេតមើល នូវការប្រើប្រាស់ទៅរួចនិង មិនអាចទៅរួច ។

Right/PosibleWrong/ ImpossibleThese grapes tast sweet.These grapes are tasting sweet.I think you are wrong.I'm thinking you are wrong.She seem good-hearted.She is seeming good-hearted.He has a cellular phone.He is having a cellular phone.

📭 តែទោះជាយ៉ាងណាក៏ដោយ ពពួកកិរិយាស័ព្ទខាងលើនេះក៏អាចប្រើបានក្នុង

Present Continuous Tense បានដែរពេលដែលអត្ថន័យរបស់វាប្រែប្រួលខុស ពីអត្ថន័យខាងលើ ។

EX: she is asting the soup to see if needs nore salt (Tast) ទីនេះមានន័យថា (ភ្នាក់)

They are having breakfast (Have) មានន័យថា ញ៉ាំ

I'm thinking of going to Phnom Penh (Think) ទីនេះមានន័យថា ពិចារណ

Present Perfect tense បច្ចុប្បន្នកាលបរិបូណ៍

និយមន័យ: Present Perfect tense គឺជាកាលមួយជំពូកដែលមានលក្ខណ:លាយចំរុះមាន បច្ចុប្បន្នកាល និងអតីត:កាល ទោះជាយ៉ាងណាក់ដោយវ៉ាតែងតែបញ្ជាក់ន័យ ទូលំទូលាយក្នុងពេលបច្ចុប្បន្ន ជាទូទៅត្រូបានប្រទះឃើញគេប្រឹក្នុងការសន្ទនា ការសរសេរសំបុត្រ សាព័ត៌មាន ។ល។

ករណីទី 9 Present Perfect tense ប្រើសំរាប់សកម្មភាពត្រូវបានគេធ្វើហើយក្នុងអតីត:ថ្មី១
(ទើបតែធ្វើហើយ) ចំពោះប្រយាគបដិសេធកំរគេប្រើ តែប្រយោគសំនួរអាចមាន
ភាគច្រើនប្រយោគស្របតែម្ដង

[S + Have/Has + Just + V3 + Obj]

EX:

She has just gone away.

He has just driven out.

I have just told you for that.

ករណីទី២ Present Perfect Tense ប្រើសំរាប់សកម្មភាពក្នុងអតីត: ពេលវេលមិនត្រូវបានគេ ផ្តល់ឱ្យមានន័យថាគេមិនប្រាស់បាន ជាក់ច្បាស់

EX:

Have you read this grammar book?

I have never seen her to be angry.

He has loved his wife and Children so much.

ករណីទី៣ Present Perfect Tense ប្រើសំរាប់ធ្វើការរាយរាប់ព្រិត្តិការណ៍ក្នុងអតីត:

តែសកម្មភាពភាគច្រើនមានក្នុងពេលបច្ចុប្បន្ន ។

EX:

He has cut his finger (មានន័យថា ឥឡូវ៉ាកំពុងតែស្រក់លោហិត)

My brother has been to P.P.

He has eaten all the bread.

She has gone to America.

ករណីទី ៤ Present Perfect Tense ប្រើសំរាប់ចង្អល់បង្ហាញនូវសកម្មភាពដែលចាប់ផ្ដើម
ក្នុងអតីត:ក្នុងពេលណាមួយ ហើយបន្តមកដល់ពេលបច្ចុប្បន្ន ជាទូទៅភ្ជាប់
ដោយពាក្យ (Since or For-phrase)

EX:

I have loved her for a long time.

They have taught English since last year.

He has lived in Siem Reap for 10 years.

We have know each other for years.

We have spoken English since 200.

He has studied English grammar for 5 years.

I have not seen her several month.

4 Present Perfect Continuous Tense (បច្ចុប្បន្នកាលបរិបូណ៍កំពុងបន្ន)

និយមន័យ វាគឹជាប្រភេទកាលកំពង់បន្តមួយបែបដែលមានលក្ខណៈទូលំទូលាយក្នុងពេល

បច្ចុប្បន្ន មានន័យថាវាជាប់មកតាំងពីអតីតម្លេះ ។

กักทีรี 9 Present Perfect Continuous Tense

ប្រើសំរាប់សកម្មភាពដែលចាប់ផ្ដើមក្នុងពេលណាមួយក្នុអតីត: ដោយនៅតែ

បន្តរហូតមកដល់បច្ចុប្បន្ន

Form [S + Has/ Have + Been + Ving + Obj]

EX:

She has been sleeping for 4 hours.

He hase been writing English grammar for 2 years.

We have been playing cards since one o'clock.

I have been learning English at Angkor University for four years.

ករណីទី ២ Present Perfect Continuous Tense

ច្រើសំរាប់សកម្មភាពដែលធ្វើចប់រួចរាល់ហើយ តែទោះយ៉ាងណាកដោយក្នុងករណី នេះភាពបន្តនៃសកម្មភាពគឺត្រូវបានបញ្ជាក់ដោយការពន្យល់ផ្សេងៗស្ថិតក្នុងនោះ

EX:

Whe are your clothes so wet? Because I have been watering the flowers in the garden.

Whe is your hand dirty? because I have been fixing the toilet.

ចំណាំ Present Perfect Continuous Tense យើងអាចប្រើ Present Perfect Tense

បានឥតមានទាស់អីទេ ជាទូទៅក្នុងការសរសេរលិខិតផ្សេងៗគេប្រទះឃើញ

Present Perfect Tense ប្រើជួសទូទៅជាង រួមទាមងការនិយាយផងដែរ តែចំពោះ

Present Perfect Continuous Tense ប៊ើមិនមានការបញ្ជាក់នៃពេល

វេលាទេមិនអាចប្រើជំនួសទេ ។

EX:

He has been living happily = He has lived happily (No way).

We have been writing English grammar.

She has been cooking food.

*ម្យ៉ាងឡើត Present Perfect Continuous Tense មិនត្រូវបានគេប្រើក្នុង Passive ទេ ។

5 Simple Future Tense (អនាគត់តកាលធម្មតា)

និយមន័យ វាគឺជាកាលមួយអំបូរដែលតែងតែត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់សកម្មភាពក្នុងអនាគត

Simple Future Tense ត្រូវបានបែងចែកជា ៤ គឺ

1 Simple Future Tense.

2 Future Continuous Tense.

3 Future Perfect Tense.

CFuture Perfect Continuous Tense.

4.1 Simple Future Tense

ករណីទី១ វាត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់និយាយអំពីរឿងរ៉ាវទាំងឡាយ

ដែលយើងមិនអាចគ្រប់គ្រងបាន ក្នុងពេលអនាគត ។

 $Form \ [\ S + Will \ / \ Shall + V1 + Obj \]$

EX:

I will be 20 years old tomorrow.

We will know our exam results in May.

He will be ten in January.

She will be fifteen next year.

ករណីទី ២ Simple Future Tense ប្រើសំរាប់និយាយអំពីអ្វីដែលយើងជឿថានិងកើតឡើង

ក្នុងពេលខាងមុខ ។

EX:

I think we will live together soon.

He will win the match.

We will begin our work on next Monday.

She will stay with us for another day.

They will be rich with every thing around them.

I belive she will be a good treasurer.

He is sure I will help him some day.

She expect he will get the first class.

ករណីទី ៣ Simple Future Tense ប្រើសំរាប់សកម្មភាពដែលយើងសំរេចចិត្តធ្វើអ្វីមួយក្នុង

ពេលដែលនិយាយ

EX: It is raining, we will take an umbrellar with.

Ourfriend is so busy at thes moment. Ok, we'll wait for him.

My wite is ill today. I'll cook food for my family.

2.4 Future Continuous Tense (អនាគតកាលកំពង់បន្ត)

និយមន័យ វាគឺជាអំបូរនៃកាលកំពង់តែបន្តមួយបែបដែលត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់សកម្មភាព

ទាំងឡាយក្នុងអនាគត ។

ករណីទី 9 Future Continuous tense ប្រើសំរាប់សកម្មភាពដែលកំបពង់តែបន្តក្នុងពេល

ណាមួយក្នុងអនាគត ។

Form [S + Will/Shall + Be + Ving + Obj]

EX: This time tomorrow I will be calling to my family.

I suppose it will be raining at this afternoon.

They will be driving my car to P.P this April.

He will be taking more ditail for my study.

ករណីទី ២ Future Continuous Tense

យើងប្រើកាលនេះនិយាយអំពីសកម្មភាពដែលគេរៀបចំរួចហើយក្នុងអនាគត ឬ

ក៏ជាសកម្មភាពដែលគេរំពឹងគិតថានិងកើតក្នុងទិសដៅធម្មតានៃរឿងរ៉ាវនោះៗ

EX: I will be studying English with foreigner at University next month.

The pstman will be coming soon.

We will getting married ttis July.

3.4 Future Perfect Tense អនាគតកាលបរិប្ចណ៍

ករណីទី 9 Future Perfect Tense ប្រើសំរាប់សកម្មភាពដែលនិងត្រូវបានគេធ្វើ

ចប់ក្នុងពេលអនាគតជាក់លាក់

Form [S + Will/Shall + Have + V3 + Obj]

EX:

I will have written English grammar University next year.

He will bahe left befor you go to see him.

By the end of this year I will have lived in Siem Reapfor 8 years.

We will have been married when I finish my University.

4.4 Future Perfect Continuous Tense (អនាគតកាលបរិបូណ៍កំបពង់បន្ត)

ការណ៍ទី១ Future Perfect Continuous Tense

ច្រើសំរាប់សកម្មភាពដែលនិងកំពង់តែបន្ត ហើយការបន្តនៃសកម្មនេះវាបន្ត រហូតដល់ពេលវេលាជាក់លាគ់មួយក្នុងអនាគត ។

Form [S + Will / Shall + Have + Been + Ving + Obj]

By next march we will have been living have for 8 years.

I will have been teaching English for 5 years next month.

She will have been working in the bank for 3 years next week.

ចំណាំ: កាលនេត្រូវបានគេប្រទះឃើញថា ជាកាលមួយអំបូរដែលមានលក្ខណៈមិនធម្មតា

តែទោះជាយ៉ាងក៏ដោយពេលខ្លះយើងអាចប្រើ Future Perfect Tens ជួសបាន ។

Going to

និយមន័យ វាគឺជាទំរង់នៃអនាគតមួយបែបស្ថិតនៅក្នុអំបូរនៃ Simple Tutrure Tense

ដែលមានការប្រើប្រាស់ដូសតទៅ ។

ករណីទី១ វាត្រូវបានគេប្រើដើម្បីបញ្ជាក់ទៅលើចេតនា មានន័យថារឿងអ្វីមួយ ដែលយើងសំរេចចិត្តថា និងធ្វើ ដែលបញ្ជាទាំងឡាយនោះស្ថិតនៅ ក្នុងចិត្តរបស់យើង ឬអានិយាយថា Going to ប្រើចំពោះសកម្មភាព ទាំងឡាយ ពេលយើងសំរេចចិត្តថានិងធ្វើមុនពេលនិយាយ (ករោង)

Form [S + Tobe(Am/Is/Are) + Going + To + Base of the verb + Obj]EX:

I am going to buy a car for travelling next year.

We are going to get married this year.

Luccile is goign to buy Hob an old car for His birthday.

Hab says he is going to work haard some day but not today.

ករណីទី២ វាត្រូវបានគេប្រើសំរាប់សកម្មភាពទាំងឡាយណាដែលទំនងនិងកើតផង ពិតជានិងកើតឡើងផង មានន័យថាមិនជាក់ច្បាស់ទេ ដូច្នេះអាចនិយាយ ថាសកម្មភាពនោះៗ ប្រហែលខ្លាំង(ជិតពិត)(Strong brobability)

និងកើតឡើងក្នុងពេលអនាគតដោយមានភស្តុតាងខ្លះ ។

EX:

I think it is going to rain, look at those clouds.

He is goign to win the match.

She is going to have a baby.

The boat is full of water, it is going to sinki in the heart of th river.

ករណីទី ៣ វាត្រូវបានគេច្រើសំរាប់សកម្មភាពដែលប្រហែលជានិងកើតឡើង មានន័យថា

ប្រហាក់ប្រហែល តែមិនមែនប្រហែលខ្លាំង (ជិតពិតនោះទេ)

EX:

Look! The cracker is going to explode.

Let's get into the train, it is going to leave.

I'm going to live in the town for ever.

*ចំណាំ ប្រសិនបើសកម្មភាពដែលមានការរៀបចំទុកជាស្រេចហើយជិតពិត ជាដើម យើងប្រើ going to មិនមែន Simple Future Tense ទេតែចំពោះសកម្មភាពដែល កើតឡើងក្នុងពេលសំរេចចិត្តភ្លាមៗ យើងប្រើ Simple Future Tense

EX:

It is rain, I'll take an umbrella (Simple future tense) She is so busy now, We'll help her at once (Simple future tense).

♦សកម្មភាព បែបនេះ Going to មិនត្រូវបានគេប្រើទេ ។

The End Of Tenses

ស្លឹកឈើ

UNIT XVI

Punctuation

និយមន័យ Punctuation វណ្ណៈយុត ឬ វណ្ណៈយុត្តិ គឺជាគ្រឿងប្រដាប់សំរាប់ប្រើផ្សំជាមួយ និងអក្សរ វណ្ណយុត្តិសម្រាប់ប្រើក្នុងភាសាខ្មែរមាន ១៨ដែលត្រូវបានប្រទះឃើញ ក្នុងការសរសេរ លិខិតផ្សេងៗ ឬក្នុងគម្ពីរផ្សេងៗ ។

- 1 (៖) ហៅថារៈមុខ ឬហៅថាវិសជនិ ឬ វិសគ៌
- ២ (") ហៅថា ធ្មេញកណ្ដរ ឬ ហៅថា មូលកទន្ត
- ៣ (ី) ហៅថាត្រីស័ព្ទ
- ៤ () ហៅថាទណ្ឌឃាត ឬ ហៅថាបដិសេធ
- ៥ 🗘 ហៅថា របាទ ឬ ហៅថាវេផ៖ (គ្រួឧទ្ទេសាចារ្យខ្លះហៅថា ក្បារ)
- ៦ () ហៅថា បន្តក់ ឬ ហៅថា រស្សសញ្ហា
- ព () ហៅថា សំយោគសញ្ហា
- ៨ (១) ហៅថា លេខទោ ឬ ហៅថា អាមេណ្ឌិតសញ្ញា
- ៩ 🖒 ហៅថា លេខអស្តា
- 90 (+) ហៅថា កាកបាទ ឬ ហៅថាជើងក្អែក
- 99 () ហៅថា កុក្កដនេត្រ បូហៅថា ភ្នែកមាន់
- ១២ (។) ហៅថា របេះ
- ១៣ (។) ហៅថា របេះចប់ ឬរបេះបរិយោសាន
- ១៤ (🏊) ហៅថា គោមូត្រ
- 9៥(}) ហៅថា គាប ឬ ហៅថា វ៉ាត់
- ១៦ (-) រដ្ឋសញ្ញា
- ១៧ (...) ហៅថា សញ្ហាពងត្រី ឬ ហៅថា មច្ចល្បួសញ្ហា
- ១៨ (។ ល ។) (។ល។) ហៅថា បេយ្យាល តែជាទូទៅគ្រួឧទ្ទេសាចារ្យខ្លះ ហៅថា ប៉េ

```
ប្ត ឡាក់ ។
```

```
ឧទ្ទេសចារ្យ គឺ អាចារ្យដែលស្ទាត់ជំនាញខាងភាសាបាលី និង បង្រៀនភាសាបាលី (សំដៅដល់ព្រះសង្ឃមានភិក្ខុជាដើម) ។
```

* ជំរឺនៅក្នុងភាសាអង់គ្លេសវិញ វណ្ណយុត្តិត្រូវបានប្រទះឃើញថាមាន ៦ ជាគោល ចំបងតែចាប់ពី៦ចុះមកគឺជាវណ្ណយុត្តិដែលត្រូវបានគេប្រើក្នុងការសរសេរលិខិត ផ្សែងៗ តែគេចាត់ទុកថា ជាវណ្ណយុត្តិសាមញ្ញ

```
1 Full stop (•)
     2 Comma (,)
     3 Colon (:)
     4 Semi colon (;)
     5 Question (?)
     6 Exclamation Mark (!)
     7 Dash or hyphen (-)
     8 Dots ( ... )
     9 Foot notes (.....)
     10 slash ( / ) back slash ( \ )
     11 square braacket or bracket ( us ) ([])
     12 Quotation Mark or inverted comma ("")
     13 Paren theses (Brit aslo Bracket) ()
     14 Apostrophe (')
*ការប្រើប្រាស់ Punctuation (វិណ្ឌយុត្តិ )
     1 Full stop (•)
ករណីទី ១ Full stop (• )ប្រើដាក់នៅខាងចុងប្រយោគដែលប្រព្រិត្តិទោដើម្បី
       ផ្កាក់សំលេងក្នុងការអានឱ្យបានវែងបំផុត ( The longest pause )
EX:
       I knock the door there was no reply.
       He loves his family more than his country.
       She is most beautiful in the vilage.
       She is the most kind of my family.
       You are most mad on football.
       They are the most mad on fighting-cog
       Dot go there.
       Please take it easy.
ករណីទី ២ Full stop (•) ប្រើនៅក្នុងការសរសេរអក្សរកាត់ ឬ អក្សរបំព្រួញ
EX:
       U. S. A
       U.K
       U.N
       P. P.
       U.N.A.
```

```
*នៅសម័យទំនើបយើងនេះ Full stop (• ) ត្រង់ចំនុចនេះត្រូវបានគេលុបចោល
EX:
       USA.
       UK.
       UN.
       PP.
       UNA.
*ចំណាំ Full stop (• )មិនត្រូវប្រើក្នុងប្រយោគសំនូរនិង ប្រយោគឧទានទេ។
EX:
       Would you help your family (Question).
       The baby cried, "Mom! Mom! (Exclamation)
       What an tattractive girl! (Exclamation)
       What a day! (Exclamation)
2 Comma (,)
ករណីទី ១ Comma (,) ត្រូវបានគេប្រើដើម្បីបង្អាក់សំលេងឱ្យបានខ្លីបំផុត
     (The shortest paus) ជាទូទៅ មាន Noun, Adjectivve, Verb, Adverb.
     Noun: We visited Angkor Wat; Bayon; Neak Pean and Jasom.
     Verb: She writes, Reads, Speaks and Sings English every day.
     Adverb: my teacher explanes English grammar very clearly, Careful,
     Convincingly, and effectively.
ករណីទី ២Comma (, ) ត្រូវបានគេប្រើដើម្បីច្បេសវាងនូវការថាដដែលៗនៃក៏រិ យាស័ព្
EX:
       I give my girlfriend a flower and him, a watch No work.
       He is a professor and his wife, a teacher.
       My son likes English, but my daughter, French.
ករណីទី ៣ Comma (,) ត្រូវបានគេប្រើដើម្បីព្រែក Subordinate Clause ពី
       Principle Clause.
EX:
       When she comes here, he will ask her aboub that.
       If we were you, we would be killed.
       If I were her, I couldn't get married to the black boy.
ករណីទី ៤ Comma ( , ) ត្រូវបានគេប្រើដើម្បីកំនត់ពាក្យទាំងឡាយ ឬ ឃ្លាទាំងឡាយ
     ដូចជា Naturally, However, Therefore, Of course, For instan, For
example...etc
EX:
       You know, of course, what a gerund is; I needn't therefore, explain it
       My sister did not, however, recover from her illness.
       I am, maturally, a poor man.
       She is of course, beautiful but mean.
ករណីទី ៥ Comma ( , ) ច្រើដាក់ពីមុខ និង ដាក់ពីក្រោយឃ្លាគុណនាមដែលបង្កើត
```

ចេញពី (Participle).

EX:

Mr. Sek, having completed his study, decided to marry to Miss Gold. We,knowing all about her pride, praised our Aunt and got permisssion to go on pinic.

He, seeing that she was hurt, ran to help her at once.

Remenbering how fond you are of fruit, I've brought you some apples from our garden.

ករណីទី ៦ Comma (,) ប្រើចំពោះងារទាំងឡាយដែលត្រូវពណ៌នា ឬ ហៅធ្វើការ បង្គ្រប់ន័យ ទៅលើនាមនៃងារនោះៗ

EX:

Elizabeth II, Queen of Great Britaen was boun in 1916.

I saw Mr. Smith, your friend, this morning.

Gandhe, the father of the nation was a great freedom fighter.

Keo Sarat, a great Singer, died in USA.

ករណីទី ៧ Comma ប្រើដើម្បី កំនត់ពាក្យដែលត្រូវបានគេនិយាយទៅកាន់មនុស្ស EX:

How are you, Mahan?

Come in the garden, Maramong.

Lord of the universe, shield us and quide us.

ករណីទី៨ Comma ប្រើដើម្បីកំនត់ ឃ្លាគុណក៏រិយា (Adverbial Phrase) ចាប់ពីពីរ ឬ ច្រើនជាងពីរដែលកើតឡើងព្រមក្នុងប្រយោគនោះ១

EX:

Then, at length, tardy justice was done to the memory of oliver.

ចំពោះ Comma (,)ជាទូទៅមិនត្រូវបានគេដាក់ពីមុខពាក្យ And ទេ ជាពីសេស ចំពោះពាក្យគេរៀបជាគូរដែលទាក់ទង និងពាក្យ And ឬ Or

EX:

She will send her postcard by ordinory post or by registrated post or by air mail.

She got angry with you and me, her mother and brother.

- *ម្យ៉ាងវិញ្ញទ្យ៉េត Comma (,) ក៏មិនត្រូវប្រើនៅខាងក្រោយប្រយោគផងដែរ ។
- *ករណីលើលេងចំពោះ Comma (,) អាចប្រើបានដោយដាក់ពីមុខពាក្យ And បើសិន ប្រយោគនោះប្រព្រិត្តិទោដើម្បីបំបែក Co ordinate clause ក្នុង Com pound sentense:

EX:

Men may come, and men may go, but I go forever.

I came, saw, and conquered.

The crowd shouted, cheered, waved, and laughted at her the player gasped, panted, and coll apsed on the ground.

```
3 Colon (:)
```

ករណីទី ១ Colon (:) ប្រើដើមផ្អាក់សំលេងដាច់យូរជាង simi colon ហើយក៏ដើម្បី
បំបែកប្រយោគដែលប្រយោគទី ២ រ៉ាយរាប់ប្រាប់អត្ថន័យផ្សេង១ យ៉ាង
ទូលំទូលាយនៃ ប្រយោគទី ១ ។

EX:

Hob's work is unsatisfactory: his answer are thoughtless, his spelling is careless and his writing as bad.

ករណីទី២ Colon (:) ប្រើដើម្បីផ្តើមប្រើសញ្ញា (-) (Dash) ដាក់ជាប់ពីក្រោយផង តែបើមិនប្រើក៏មិនមានទោសពៃអីទេ ។

EX:

Jhon keats says: - "A thing of beauty is a jou forever". Mr.Priestly says:- "Hob is all right at telling a joke".

Hob is saying:- "A don't like grammar".

Lucille said:- "Hob is lazy indeed".

Jan has said:- "I support Lucille's idea".

ករណីទី ៣ Colon (:) ត្រូវបានគេច្រើដើម្បី បង្កើតនូវបញ្ជីអ្វីមួយ

EX:

The girl I love: beautyful,clear,mean, rich, friendly and also lazy. The singers I like most are: Kev Sarat, Sin Sisamut, Rus Sereysother, Pen Rorn, Meas Soksophia and Meng Kev Pechenda.

3 Semi Colon (;) ជសញ្ញាមួយបែបដែលត្រូវបានគេកំនត់ឱ្យផ្ទាក់សំលេងវែងជាង Comma (,)

ករណីទី១ Semi Colon (;) ប្រើដើម្បប់បែក Clause ដែលស្ថិតក្នុង Compound sentense នៅពេលដែល Clause នោះ ១មាន Comma

EX:

He was brave, large hearted man; and all of us honoured him. My uncle is a poor, uneducated, honest and gentle man; but I love him so much.

ករណីទី ២ Semi Colon (;) ច្រើដើម្បីញែកប្រយោគជាពិសេស នៅពេល

Conjunction មិនត្រូវបានគេប្រើក្នុងប្រយោគនោះៗ

EX:

"Your appearance pleased my friend; then it delighted me; I have watched your behavecour in strange circumstances; I have studied how you played and how you bore your losses lastly; I have asked you to do a most dangerious thing, and you recieved it like an invitation to dinner".

ករណីទី ៣ Semi Colon (;) ប្រើជាមួយពាក្យដូចជា So, Therefore, Never theless,

Besides, Then, Other wise ដោយពាក្យទាំងនេះមានទំនងជាងការប្រើ

Conjunction (And និង But).

EX:

Do the work well; then I will pay you.

You must take more exercise; otherwise; you will get too fat.

My son didn't work hard; so he didn't pass his examination.

I'm very poor; therefor I can't attend at University.

He is handsome; besides he can sing sweetly.

My brother is poor; nevertheles he doesn't kill any animal.

ករណីទី ៤ Semi Colon (;) ប្រើដើម្បី ញែកប្រយោគដែលពាក់ព័ន្ឋគ្នាយា៉ងជិតស្និទ្ធិ

នូវគំនិតនោះៗ មានន័យថាគំនិតក្នុងប្រយោកនោះ ហាក់ដូចជានិយាយ

រឿងតែមួយ ។

EX:

Her court is pure; her life is serere; god gave her peace; her land reposed.

Today we love what tomorrow we hate; today we seek what tomorrow we shun; today we desire what tomorrow we fear.

As she got married; I got ill.

As he is an honest man; we honour him as father.

5 Question or Interogation Mard (?)

ករណីទី 9 Question Mark (?) ត្រូវបានគេប្រើខាងក្រោយប្រយោគសំនួរផ្ទាល់ Irect

speed ជំនួសឱ្យ Full stop ពោលគឺ Full stop ក្នុងករណីនេះមិនប្រើទេ ។

EX:

What's your name?

If you prick us, do we not bleed?

If you kill my father, do I not have revenge?

If she trickles me, do we not die?

ចំណាំ Question Mark or Interrogation Mark (?) ចំពោះសំដីសួរ ប្រយោល

Indirect question គឺមិនប្រើទេ ។

EX:

I asked her when she was married.

He enquired if she had any reply from her husband.

He asked my how old I was.

I asked him if he could sing.

ករណីទី ២ Question Mark (?) ប្រើដាក់ក្នុងវង់ក្រចកបញ្ជាក់លីការសង្ស័យ

EX:

Jhon Marston (? 1575-1634)

This book (? 2009-2012)

៚(ប្រយោតខាងលើនេះមិនពិតប្រាកដក្នុងឆ្នាំណាមួយទេតែមិនអាចដាក់ ពីក្រោយបាន

ទេក្នុងករណីនេះ)

```
6 Exlamation Mark (!)
ករណីទី១ Exlamation Mark (!) ត្រូវបានគេប្រើដាក់ពីក្រោយប្រយោគឧទាន
       (Exclamator sentense) និងដាក់ពីក្រោយឃា ប ប្រយោគដែលបញ្ជាក់ពី
        អារម្មណ៍ ភ្នាក់ផ្អើល (Sudden emotion).
EX
       What a great victory!
        What a lazy dog!
       How well he speaks!
       A las! she will get married soon.
       Oh dear! you are very nice, today.
       Hello! Good luck! congratulation! Bye! Bye!
ករណីទី ២ Exlamation Mark (!) ត្រូវបានគេប្រើដាក់ពីក្រោយពាក្យបញ្ជាខ្លី ៗ
EX:
       Shut up!
       Wait!
       Write down!
       Come here!
       Go there!
       Stop here!
ករណីទី ៣ Exlamation Mark (!) ពេល Interjection • ត្រូវបានដាក់ពីនាមនោះៗ ឬ
        អាចដាក់ខាងចុងប្រយោគក៏បានដែរ
EX:
     • King! we think that you are our father.
     • father ! I hear the sound of guns.
     • Jhon, speak no more!
7 Dash (-)
ករណីទី 9 Dash (—) ច្រើដើម្បីផ្លាស់ប្តូរនូវគំនិត ឬ ដើម្បីចង្អល់បង្ហាញនូវការឈប់ព្រិប
       ឬឈប់ងាក់តែម្តងជាពិសេសនោះគឺច្រើ Dash ជាការជំនួសឱ្យ
        Colon and Semi colon
        ប្រព្រឹត្តទៅដើម្បីធ្វើឱ្យសំនេរនិងការអានរបស់ផងខមានភាពរស់រវើក។
EX:
        You have told a lie to me for many a time — how can I believe you
     easily?
       If my husband were alive — but why lamant the past?
       He really loves her- but she doesn't return his love.
8 Hyphen (-) ជាទូទៅសញ្ញានេះខ្លីជាងសញ្ញា Dash (—)
ករណីទី ១ វាត្រូវបានគេប្រើដើម្បីភ្ជាប់ផ្នែកនៃពាក្យសមាស ( Compound word )
EX:
       Hard - hearted.
```

ស្លឹកឈើ

```
Good – tempered.
       Bad - hearted.
ករណីទី ២ វាត្រូវបានគេប្រើដើម្បីបង្កើតសមាស ( Compound ) ចេញពីពាក្យពីរ
       ដែលពែកដោយអាយតនៈនិបាត ( Preposition )
EX:
       Mather - in - law.
       Father - in - law.
       Man - of - war.
       Passer - by.
       Cormmander - in - chief.
       Mother - toby.
ករណីទី ៣ វ៉ាត្រូវបានគេប្រីដើម្បីសរសេរនូវ លេខសមាស ( Compound Number )
       ដោយគិតពីលេខ 21 និង 99.
EX:
     Seventy – three. Twenty – one.
                                        Thirty – three.
     Eighty – four.
                                       Thirty -\sin x.
                      Minety – nine.
     Ninety – five.
                      Fifty –five.
                                        Thirty -\sin x.
     Four hundred and thirty – one.
                                        Thirty – seven.
ករណីទី៤ វាត្រូវបានគេប្រើរវាង លេខឬកាលបរិច្ឆេទពីរដែលបូករួមនឹងអ្វីៗដែលកើត ឡើង
EX:
     I will read thi book from page 106-131 tonight.
     A study of the British economy, 1947-63.
ករណីទី ៥ វាត្រូវបានគេប្រើដើម្បីពោកបពបទដែលបពាប់ដោយស្រះតែមយពីពាក្យ
       មួយដែលផ្ដើដោយស្រះដូចគ្នា ។
EX:
     Co-ordination.
     Re-elect.
     Pre-emenent.
ករណីទី ៦ វាត្រូវបានគេប្រើដាក់បន្ទាប់ពីផ្នែកទី ១ នៃពាក្យដែលត្រូវាគេចែករវាង
     បន្ទាត់មួយនិង បន្ទាត់បន្ទាប់ផ្សេងឡេត (ពេលសរសេរមិនអស់ពាក្យដែលពាក្យ
     នោះៗស្ថិតនៅខាងចុងសន្លឹល)
EX:
     Now, we must be careful in order that we can avoicl future mis.
     Takes of this kind.
ករណីទី៧ វាត្រូវបានគេប្រើដើម្បីបង្កើតសមាស (Compound) ចេញពីបុព្វបទ (Prefix)
       និងឈ្មោះអសាធារ (Proper name)
EX:
     Pre – Angkorian period.
```

ស្លឹកឈើ

Pro -soviet

Anty -Nazi

Anty - Nato

8 Dot (...) and 9 Foot Note (......)

10 Slah (/) ពេលខ្លះ UK ហៅថា (Obligue) US ហៅថា (Virgule)

ករណីទី ១ Slash ប្រើដើម្បីញែកពាក្យ ឬ ប្រយោគផ្សេងគ្នា

EX:

Take a rain coat and / or an umbrella.

In present perfect tense always uses Have / Has + V3 + Obj

I certify that I am single / married / divorced

(Delete whichever does not appy)...

ករណីទី ២ Slash ប្រើដើម្បីចង្អល់បង្ហាញពីចុងបញ្ជប់នៃបន្ទាត់នីមួយ១

របស់កំនាព្យដែលបន្ទាត់ជាច្រើនឡេតនៅមានបន្តសេចក្តីនោះ

EX:

EX:

Wordworth's famouse lines, "I wandered lonely as a cloud that floats on high o'er vales and thills..."

11 Square Bracket or Bracket (US)[]

ករណីទី១ Square Bracket ប្រើដើម្បីបិទនូវសេចក្ដីអធិប្បាយដែលគេថ្លែងឡើង

A notice reading, "Everything to be put away in it's [Sic] place after use. Constant references in her diary to Mr G [Landstone]'s visit.

12 Paren theses () (Brit also Breaket).

ករណីទី១ Paren theses ប្រើដើម្បីញែកនូវពត៌មានបន្ថែម ឬដាក់ពីក្រោយ កិច្ចអត្ថា ធិប្បា យណាមួយចេញពីសំន់នៃប្រយោគ

EX:

Mount Robson (12972 feet) is the highest mountain in the candain Rockies.

He think that modern music (ie anything writhen after 1900) is rubbish.

ករណីទី ២ Paren these ប្រើដើម្បីហ៊ំ ព័ទ្ឋនូវពន្ទាត់ក្នុងឯកសារយោង។

EX:

This moral ambiguity is a feature of Shakespear's later works (See chapter 9)

With should, would, might and could to form the perfect conditional (See 223).

ករណីទី ៣ Paren these ប្រើដើម្បីហ៊ំព័ទ្ឋលេខ ឬអក្សរក្នុងអត្ថបទ

EX:

Our obectives are (1) to increase out put (2) to improve quality and (3) to maximize profits. What you say is (A) unreal (B) irrelevant.

```
13 Apostrophe (')
   ករណីទី ១ Apostrophe (') ប្រើជាមួយនី្យនឹងអក្សរ (S) ដើម្បីចង្អល់បង្ហាញនូវកម្មសិទ្ធិ
   EX:
        The dog's bone
        Jhon's book
                          \succeq = (Singular noun)
        King's work
        King charles's crown (Proper noun ending in "S")
        All the students' books (Plual noun).
        The men's jackets (Irregular plural).
   ករណីទី ២ Apostrophe ប្រើក្នុងទំរង់បំព្រួញដើម្បីចង្អល់បង្ហាញលើអក្សរ ឬ
           លេខដែលត្រូវបានលុបចោល
   EX:
        I don't (= I do not).
        I've (=I \text{ have }).
        I'll (=I will ).
        They'd (= They had / Would).
   ករណីទី ៣ Apostrophe ពេលខ្លះប្រើជាមួយអក្សរ (S) ដើម្បីបង្កើពហុវិចនៈ នៃអក្សរ,
           តលេខ បអក្សរកាត់
   EX:
        Pronounce the r's mour clearly.
        He lived in the modern town during the 1960's.
        I don't know about all the MP's.
   14 Quatation Mark ("") UK ប្រើ (""), us ប្រើ ('')
ករណីទី១ Quotation Mark ប្រើដើម្បីហ៊ំព័ទពាក្យ និង វណ្ណ:យុត្តិ ទាំងអស់ក្នុងសំដីផ្ទាល់
         (Direct speech)
EX:
        He said; "I love my family more than everything".
        She said, "you are mad on family".
        I said, "every thing in the world will go away exactly".
ករណីទី២ Quotation Mark ប្រើដើម្បីទាក់ទាញចំណាប់អារម្មណ៍ ចំពោះពាក្យដែលប្លែក
         ក្នុងអត្ថបទ ជាពីសេស ពាក្យបច្ចេកទេស និង គ្រាមភាសា ( A technical and slang
         expression)
EX:
        He told me in no uncertain terms to "get lost".
        Thousands were imprisonsed in the name of "national security".
ករណីទី ៣ Quotation Mark ប្រើដើម្បីហ៊ីព័ទ្ធជើងអត្ថបទ, កំណាព្យខ្លីៗ, កម្មវិធីវិទ្យុ,
         កម្មវិធីទូរទស្សន៍
EX:
        I was watching "Match of the Day".
```

ស្លឹកឈើ

"the private Life of walter Mitty", starring Danny Kaye.

ករណីទី ៤ Quotation Mark ច្រើដើម្បីហ៊ំព័ទ្ឋ នូវពាក្យចាស់ (Saying) ឬ

(Quotation).

Grandpa said "it's better to be 'late' than the 'late'".

Do you know the origin of the saying "A little learning is a dangerious thing".

The End Of Punctuation

UNIT XVI CAPITAL LETTERS

ករណីទី 9 Capital Letter ប្រើនៅដើមប្រយោគ

EX:

Prevention is better than cure.

Something is better than nothing.

Punctuate the follwing passage.

ករណីទី ២ Capital Letter ប្រើដាក់ដើមបន្ទាត់នីមួយៗនៃកំណាព្យ ។

EX:

What is this life if, full of care,

We have no time to stand and stare!

No time to at nd beneath the oughs,

And stare as long as sheep and cous.

No time to see, when woods we pass,

Where squirrels hide their nuts in grass.

No time to turn at beauty's glance,

And watch her feet, laow they can dance.

No time to wait till her mouth can

Enrich that smile her eyes began.

A poor life this if, full of care,

We hve no time to stand and stare.

ករណីទី ៣ Capital Letter ប្រើសំរាប់ឈោ្មះមនុស្ស, ទីកន្លែង, ភ្នំ, ទន្លេ ។ល។

EX:

I know Hop well.

Mr. Priestly is good at teaching.

Jan filt in love wite Frieda.

Siem Reap the great town in Cabodia.

We want to go to Boeung Tonlee Sap 3:00 PM.

ករណីទី ៤ Capital Letter ប្រើសំរាប់ជាតិ សាសន៍ និង គុណនាម ដែលបញ្ជាក់ពី

ជាតិសាសន៍នោះៗ

EX:

India, Indian, Cambodia, Cambodian...etc.

Most of drives don't like Indian people.

I have never gone to India before.

They live in Cambodia and they speak Cambodian well.

Why do you want to work in America.

I think some Amerians are rude.

ករណីទី ៥ Capital Letter ប្រើសំរាប់ឈ្មោះ ថ្ងៃ, ខែ, បុណ្យជាតិ, និង សម័យប្រវត្តិសាស្ត្រ ។

EX:

We go to Phnom Penh on Sunday.

He is killed on next Monday.

She get married in jun.

I go home on Khmer New year day.

I think the Independen a day come soon.

The indendence day was brought by King Sihanuk.

ករណីទី ៦ Capital Letter ប្រើសំរាប់ឈោ្មះស្យេវភៅ, រោងល្ខោង, កិច្ចការសិល្បៈ

EX:

He is all right at explaing something in the Bible.

I like Hight school, longman and Harrap.

I want to see Pomeo and uliet again.

Do you like the Hamlet?

ករណីទី ៧ Capital Letter ប្រើសំរាប់ងាររបស់មនុស្ស និង ឈ្មោះ របស់វត្ថុអ្វីម្យ៉ាង

ដែលយើងនិយាយសំដៅតែមួយ ។

EX:

The king of England is extremly brilliant.

The president of India is so rich and clever.

She lives in good condition near the Eterral City.

ករណីទី ៨ Capital Letter ប្រើសំរាប់គុណនាមទាំងអស់ដែលមាន ប្រភពចេញពី

អសាធារណនាម (Proper noun)

EX:

There are many christian churchesin Cambodia, now Canadian can speak French well.

Cambodian can speak English day by day.

ករណីទី៩ Capital Letter ប្រើសំរាប់នាមនិង សព្វនាមទាំងអស់ដែលតំណាងឱ្យអទិទេព្វ (God)

EX:

The Lord of the univers can't object with the natural law.

Before Cambodian people believe in the Trinity.

ករណីទី 90 Capital Letter ប្រើជាមួយស័ព្ទនាម "I"និង Interjection "o"

EX:

O brother! you are right.

O father! she is so snobish and black.

I don't care about my life.

Even though she is poor, I still love her forever.

Do I say wrong?

The End Of Capital Letter

UNIT XVIIINTERJECTION

និយមន័យ Interjection គឺជាពាក្យសំរាប់បញ្ជាក់ពីអារម្មណ៍ភ្ញាក់ផ្ញើល

EX:

Oh! Hello! Ah! Alas! Superb! Excellent! Well done! Well said! Splendid!

Fantastic! Marvellous! Great!...etc

Hello! how are you, Jhon?

Alas! what a beautiful girl!

Excellent! the price is good.

ចំណាំ : Interjections គ្រាន់តែជាពាក្យផ្ដើមតែប៉ុណ្ណោះ ពោលគឺ មិនត្រូវបានគេបញ្ចូល

ក្នុងសំណងប្រយោគទេ ។

UNIT XVIII

GERUND

និយមន័យ Gerund គឺជាពាក្យដែលបញ្ជាក់ដោយ "Ing" និងមានឥទ្ធិពលទៅលើនាមនិង

ក៊ីវិយាស័ព្ទ ពោលគឺត្រូវបានគេស្គាល់ថាជា "Verbal Noun" នាមកើតចេញពី

កិរិយាស័ព្ទ ។

ករណីទី១ Gerund ប្រើជាប្រធាននៃក៏វិយាស័ព្ទ

EX: Reading books increase our knowlege.

Working hard makes us succeful

Your speaking drives her upset.

ករណីទី ២ Gerund ប្រើជាកម្មបទនៃក៏រិយាស័ព្ទ

EX: My grandpa dislikes sleeping long.

I prefer studying computer science.

She wants cooking by herself.

ករណីទី ៣ Gerund ប្រើជាកម្មបទនៃអាយតនិបាត

EX: I am tried of listening rocking song.

She is afraid of telling the truth.

He thinks brfore speaking.

My father is addicted to drinking.

ករណីទី ៤ Gerund ប្រើជាបទបំពេញន័យនៃក៏រិយាស័ព្ទ (Complement of a Verb)

EX: My aim in life is becoming a writer.

What I want to do in my life is achieving my golf.

My job is teaching English and computer.

ករណីទី ៥ Gerund ប្រើដូចជានាមសាមញ (An ordinary Noun)

EX: The planning of time helps me succeed in my life.

The loving of children delights my.

The collecting of taxes is the duty of the government.

ករណីទី ៦ Gerund ប្រើដាក់លើកម្មសិទ្ធិទៅលើនាមនិងសព្ទនាម ដែលប្រើនៅមុខ Gerund.

EX: He insisted on my paying the money.

My wilfe's discussing is useful.

Many people love Mr Kung Buchhen's writing.



UNIT XIX The Participle

និយមន័យ: វាគឺជាប្រភែទពាក្យម្យ៉ាងដែលមាន លក្ខណ:ពិសេសទៅលើ កិរិយា ស័ព្ទ និងគុណនាមពោលគឺវាផ្នែកខ្លះនៃកិរិយាសព្ទហើយជាផ្នែកខ្លះនៃគុណនាម ផងដែរនៅក្នុងភាសាអង់គ្លេស participle ត្រូវបានគេបែងចែកជាបីចំនែកគឺ:

9 Present Participle

D Past Participle

m perfect Participle

9 Present Participle

Active Form:

Form [S + Tobe + (Am, Is, Are, Was, Were, + Ving + Obj]

EX: I am writing English grammar.

She is watching Match of the Day yesterday.

You are telling a lie;

Passive Form:

Form [s + to be + (am, is, are, was, were, + Being +v3 + obj]

EX: He was being killed last night.

The car is being driven by her.

The food is being cooked by my wife.

ស្លឹកឈើ

This book was written by Mr Sek.

<u>ចំណាំ</u> កាលកំពុងបន្តទាំងនេះ Active ក្តី Past sive ក្តី គឺតែងតែមានវត្តមាន

Present Participle ស្ថិតនៅក្នុងប្រយោគនោះៗជាដរាប។

ករណីទី២ Present Participle ប្រើជាគុំណនាម

EX:

He needs running water everyday.

They want to go to the floating village at afternoon.

We have to fix our dripping taps, today.

ករណីទី៣ Present Participle ប្រើដាក់ពីក្រោយកិរិយា ("Have"+ Obj)

EX: He had me swimming in his pool.

We have people standing on our steps all day.

I won't have him cleaning his bike in the kitchen.

ករណីទី៤ present participle ប្រើជំនួសឲ្យ(Relative Pronoun) + Verb

EX: A map that marks/ marked political boundaries=A map maring political boundaries.

People wishing to visit the caves.

The pretty girl who cooks food is my wife=

The pretty girl cooking food is my wife.

ករណីទី៥ Present Participle ប្រើដើម្បីផ្ដើមសេចក្ដីថ្លែងការ ដូចជា Adding/ Pointing out/

Reminding/Warming etc

EX: He told me to start early, reminding.

She suggested shopping on Friday, pointing out that the super market would be crowded on Saturday.

She begged him not to drink too much, reminding him that he'd have to drive home.

ករណីទ៦ Present Participle ប្រើដាក់បន្ទាប់ពីកិរិយាស័ព្ទដែលពាក់ព័ន្ធនិងអាម្មណ៍ (A verb of sen sation) See, Hear, Feel, Smell,

EX: I see her passing my school everyday.

I hear the clock striking every time.

She felt the car skidding.

He smelt something burning and saw smoke rising.

ករណីទ៧ Present Participle ប្រើដាក់បន្ទាប់ពីកិរិយាស័ព្ទ Caught, Find, Leave, Go, Come,

Spend, Waste, Be busy, There is/Ware

EX: The policemen caught the robbers stealing his watch.

I found her cooking for hours in the Kitchen.

He left me talking to Bob=I was taking to Bob when he left.

They are going sking.

She comes dancing.

He spends two hours reading his grammar.

Hob doesn't spend time watching TV everyday.

I am busy wrking the songs.

There are many people living in poverty.

There was a teacher teaching English in the center.

2 Past Participle គឺជាប្រភេទក៏វិយាស័ព្ទម្យ៉ាង

ដែលត្រូវបានកែបំពេញហើយសភាវៈ នៃរឿងរ៉ាវដែលគែនិយាយកាន់

ករណីទី១ Past Participle ប្រើធ្វើជាគុណនាម

EX:

No one takes the fallentree away.

I can't use your broken glass.

I think that you are a tired driver.

Don't trust the written report.

A burnt child dreads the fire.

He weares a worried look.

His finished manners produced a very favourable imprisson.

He was reputed to be the most learned man of his time.

A lost opportunity never returns.

ករណីទី២ Past Participle ្រើដើម្បីបង្កើត Perfect Tense and Passive

EX:

I have loved her for agges.

He has never seen the terrible film.

The car has broken for 2 days.

He was killed last night.

You are defeated today.

She is kissed by him.

ករណីទី៣ Past Participle ប្រើជំនួសឱ្យបទប្រធាន(Subject + Passive Verb

មានន័យថាបទប្រធានអាចត្រូវបានគេលុបចោល ក្នុងករណីមាន Passive Verb

EX:

She enters, she is accompanied by her mother=She enter, accompanied by her mother.

As he was convinced that they were trying to poison him, he refused to eat anything=Convinced that they were trying to poison him, he frfused to eat anything.

Deceived by his friends, he lost all hope.

Driven by hunger, he stole a piece of bread.

We saw a few tres laden with fruit.

3 Perfect Participle ត្រូវបានគេបង្កើតចេញពី Having + Past Participle

Eg: having done, having seen (Active) having beech doing, have been seeing...etc.

ករណីទី១ Perfect Participle អាចប្រើដើម្បីជំនួសឱ្យ Present Participle

ចំពោះសកម្មភាពដែលស្ថិតនៅជាប់ និង សកម្មភាពផ្សេងទៀតដោយមានបទប្រធានដូចគ្នា

ស្លឹកឈើ

EX:

Tying one end of the rope to his bed, he threw the other end out of the window= Having tied one end of the rope to his bed, he threw the other end out ot the window.

ចំណាំ: Perfect Participle បញ្ញាក់ថាសកម្មភាពទី១ កើតមុន ឬត្រូវបានគេបំពេញមុន សកម្មភាពទី២ ចាប់ផ្ដើម ប៉ុន្តែជាធម្មតាវាមិនមានភាពចាំបាច់ខេក្នុងការប្រើរួមយ៉ាងនេះ លើក លែងតែប្រើប្រាស់ Present Participle អាចច្រឡំបុលគ្នា មានន័យថា ការប្រើ Present Participle យើងមិនដឹងពីសកម្មភាព ណាកើតមុន ណាកើតក្រោយ.....នោះយើងត្រូវប្រើ Present Participle ជំនួសវិញ

EX:

Reading the instruction, he snatched up the fire extinguisher(ជំនួសដោយ

Perfect participle)
Having read the instructions, he snatched up the fire extinguisher.

Having failed twice, he didn't try again.

📣 មួយវិញទៀត Perfect Participle ប្រើនៅពេលដែលសកម្មភាពទី១ធ្វើសេចក្តីរាយការស្តីអំពី កំឡុងនៃពេលវេលា

having been his own bass for such a long time, he found it hard to accept orders from another.

ករណីទី៤ Perfect Participle ប្រើដាក់ពីមុខដោយនាម ឬ សព្វនាម EX:

The weather being fine, I went out.

Many having arrived, we were freed from anxiety.

The sea being smooth, we went for sail.

His master being absent, the business was neglected.

ករណីទី៥ កំហុសនៃការប្រើប្រាស់ Participle មានន័យថា មិនគួរប្រើក្នុងករណីនេះ

- 1 Standing at the gate, a scorpion stung him.
- 2 Going up the hill, an old temple was seen.
- 3 Entering the room, the light went quite dazzing.

ដើម្បីធ្វើឱ្យប្រយោគទាំងនេះក្លាយមកកាន់ភាពត្រឹមត្រូវគួរប្រើយ៉ាងនេះ

1 Standing at the gate, He was stung by a scorpion រឺនិយាយយ៉ាងនេះក៏មិនខុសអីទេ

While he was standing at the gate, a scorpion stung him.

- 2 When he went up the hill, we saw an old temple.
- 3 Entering the room, I found the light quit dazzing អាចនិយាយយ៉ាងនេះក៏បាន when I entered the room, the light was quite dazzing.

<u>The end of the participles</u>

ស្លីកឈើ

Page 157

UNIT XXI

OUESTION TAG

និយមន័យ: Question Tag គឺជាក្រុមនៃពាក្យសួរខ្លីៗ ដែលត្រូវប្រើនៅខាងចុងនៃប្រយោគដើម្បី សួរបញ្ជាក់ ចំពោះអ្នកស្ដាប់ថា ព្រមឬមិនព្រមនូវអ្វីដែលបានសួរហើយនោះតាមស្យៅវភៅវេយ្យាក រណ៍ ជាច្រើនប្រាប់ថា Question Tag បើប្រយោគនោះមាន Auxilary verb គប្បីយកកិរិយាស័ព្ទ ដណនួយនោះមកប្រើធ្វើជាសំនួរខាងចុងនៃប្រយោគ តែថាបើប្រយោគនោះស្រប សំនួរខាងចុង ត្រូវប្រើ បដិសេធ បើប្រយោគបដិសេធ សំនួរខាងចុងត្រូវប្រើស្របវិញ ។ ម្យ៉ាងវិញទៀតបើប្រយោគនោះហត្ថានកិរិយាស័ព្ទ៥ ត្រូវយកកិរិយាស័ព្ទ Do, Does, Did, មកប្រើជាដរាប ។

EX: She is beautiful, is she?

She can teach English, Can't she?

You'll go to P P tomorrow, won't you?

You don't live in this town, do you?

He hasn't told you that, has he?

She stayed in BB, didn't she?

I loved her somuch, didn't I?

We went to Bonteay Srey, didn't we?

You scolded his mother, didn't you?

ករណីបញ្ជាគច្បីយកយ៉ាងនេះមកច្រើ

EX: Open your mouth, wil you?

Work hard dear, will you?

Stop smoking now, will you?

Say no to "beer", will you?

Let't: ជប្បីប្រើ Shall

Let's go for a walk, shall we?

Let's marry next year, shall we?

Let's give some food to our parents, shall we?

Too + Adjective= ន័យព្រៃថា "មិន"

[S + Tobe + Too + Adjective + Full infinitive]

EX: Yor are too old to walk.

She is too young to marry.

He is too poor to attend the university.

You are too hungry to work.

I am too gentle to fisht my children.

She is too mean to talkk with.

It is too long for me to remornber.

The car is too expensive for me to buy.

The problem is too hard for my family to solve.

This test is too difficult for him to pass the exam.

ចំណាំ: Am and Used to គប្បីប្រើយ៉ាងនេះ

I am a man, aren't I? I am a prfessor of English, aren't I? You used to play cards, didn't you? He used to get married, didn't he?

The end of Question Tag

UNIT XXI

Agrement and Disagrement

និយមន័យ: ពួកគេគឺជាក្រុមពាក្យធ្វើយ៉ាងខ្លីក្នុងនោះមានវិធីឆ្លើយផ្សេងៗគ្នា ដូចតទៅ

ករណីទី១: កាលណាគ្មានក៏វិយាស័ព្ទជំនួយ (Axilary verb) ត្រូវយកក៏វិយាស័ព្ទ Do, Does, Did,

មកប្រើជាមួយ And so តែចំពោះពាក្យ And មិនប្រើមិនខុសអីទេ

EX: his wife is clever. And so is he.

She is happy. And so am I.

We are tired- and so are they.

He works in the hotel. And so do I.

She dances niuly. And so do you.

You can speak English. And so can I.

She has got a car. And so has he.

He must be rich. And so must she.

My wite gets up at 6:00AM. So do I.

I teach English everyday. So does my wife.

They live in the modern town. So do we.

They work everyday. So do we.

ចំណាំ: ប្រយោគទាំងនេះ អាចនិយាយយ៉ាងនេះក៏បានដែរ

EX: His wife is dever. He is too.

She is happy. He is too.

We are tired. They are too.

He works in the hotel. I do too.

She is lazy. I am too.

He will go hme. I will too.

ករណីទី២: ជាមួយចំលើខ្លីៗអាចត្រូវបានបញ្ជាក់នូវ Agreement

ដែលពាក់ព័ន្ធជាមួយនិងគំនិតផ្សេងៗ

EX: i think she is dever. Yes, she is.

Hob has done badly in his exams yea, he has.

He'll pay the money all right, won't he? Of cause he will.

Don't you think she ought to work harder certainly I do or yes, she ought.

That window is open. Yes it's.

I told u the answer yesterday. So you did.

There is a mouse eating apples. So there is. You've given up your study. So I have.

ចំណាំ: យើងមិនអាចនិយាយបានទេក្នុងករណីបែបនេះ

EX: Frieda answered the question well. And so answered Jan.

Lucille speaks French and so speaks Hob.

He can play the quita and so play I.

ដូច្នេះពពួកកិរិយាស័ព្ទដែលប្រើក្នុងសំណង់ប្រយោគទាំងនេះបានគឺ Be, Do, Have, Can, Shall, Will, May.

ករណីទី៣: ប្រយោគបដិសេធជាទូទៅយើងប្រើ Neither nor ដែលភ្ជាប់ ជាមួយ

ពពកកិរិយាស័ព្ទជំនយ Axilary verb ។

EX: Jan hasn't given the right answer. Neither has Frieda.

My wife can't speak Russian. Neither can I.

He mustn't come here. Neither must she.

Frieda didn't go to the danu. Neither did Hob.

ប្រយោគទាំងនេះយើងអាចនិយាយាយ៉ាងនេះក៏គ្មានខុសអីដែរ ។

Jan hasn't given the right answer. Neither nor has Frieda.

My wife can't speak russian. Neither nor can I.

He mustn't came here. Neither nor must she.

Frieda didn't to the dance. Niether nor did Hob.

ប្រយោកទាំងនេះយើងអាចនិយាយាយ៉ាងនេះក៏គ្មានខុសអ៊ីដែរ ។

Jan hasn't given the right answer. Frieda hasn't either.

My wife can't speak Russian. I can't either.

He mustn't come here. She mustn't either.

Frieda didn't go to the dance. Hob didn't either.

មានសំណង់ប្រយោគមួយដែលបញ្ចូលគ្នារវាងចំលើយខ្លីៗនិង,ឃ្លាសំនួរ

ជាទូទៅពួកគេធ្វើការនៅពេលយើងចង់បញ្ជាក់ពីភាពភ្ញាក់ផ្អើល ឬក៏និយាយរឿងរ៉ាវទាំងឡាយណា ដែលស្ថិតក្នុងភាពមិនសប្បាយចិត្ត ឬទាស់គ្នា តែទោះយ៉ាងណាយើងត្រូវស្ដាប់ដោយប្រុងប្រយ័ត្ត នូវការលើកដាក់សំលេងឃ្លាចុងក្រោយ។

EX: "I've left my book at home" "oh you have, have you?

"I can't pay you the money"

That I owe you" "oh you don't don't you?

"My son hates English coffee" "oh he does, does he?

"Hob tore the book" "oh he did, did he?

"I love my wife somuch "oh you do, do you?

着 ដូច្នេះយើងសង្កេតឃើញថាការប្រើប្រាស់សំណង់ប្រយោគទាំងនេះមិនអាចគេចផុតពីការប្រើ

Axilary verb ទាំង១២បានទេ តែប្លែកពី Agreement and Disagreement.

បើប្រើប្រយោគស្របខាងដើម ប្រយោគខាងចុងប្រើប្រយោគស្របដែរ,

បើប្រើយោគខាងដើមបដិសេធ ប្រយោគខាងចុងប្រើប្រយោគបដិសេធដែរ

តែទោះយ៉ាងណាក៏ដោយក៏មិនត្រូវបានគេចាត់ចូលក្នុង Agreement and Disagreement ទេ។

The end of Agreement and Disagreement

Unit XXV

Direct and Indirect Speech

និយមន័យ speech គឺជាវោហាស័ព្ទ ប្រព្រឹត្តិទៅដើម្បី ធ្វើការទំនាក់ទំនង តែក្នុងមេរ្យេននេះសំដៅដល់ លោកវោហា បរមត្ថវោហាទេ ។នៅក្នុងភាសាអង់គ្លេស speech ត្រូវបានគេចែកជាពីរពួកគឺ

1 Direct Speech

2 Indirect Speech

1 Direct Speech

និយមន័យ: Direct Speech គឺជាសំដីផ្ដាល់ពោលគឺយើងនិយាយជាថ្មីនូវសំដីដើមទាំងស្រុងរបស់អ្នក ណាម្នាក់ ដែលគាត់បាននិយាយហើយទៅកាន់អ្នកដទៃ។

EX:

Pedro's father said= "I want you to spend a year in paris and a year in Germany so that you can get a really good knowledge of French and German."

He said="I do love you."

Mr. Hob said="I like to tell a joke."

She said="you will be able to run your business."

Padma said="I want to study medicine."

Mr, Sek said="I like teaching English."

A black boy said="the sun rises in the west."

A lovely girl said="the sun sets in the west."

ចំណាំ: សំដីផ្ទាល់ទាំងនេះប្រព្រឹត្តិទៅដើម្បីថ្លែងការណ៍ (Make a statement).

Pedro= "How much longer are you staying in England,Olag?"

The picture firm to Mr Boost= when do you want us to stop?

Mr Sek said,"How long does it take to get from Siem Reap to PP?"

Hob said, "Can you swim, Andrew?"

Hob: "May I have another piece of cake, please?"

My son said: "where is my mome?"

My daughter to her brother="Do you like English grammar?"

My friend to me= "Can you go out, tonight?"

ចំណាំ: Direct Speech ប្រភេទនេះត្រូវបានគេហៅថា Direct Question ប្រព្រឹត្តិទៅដើម្បីសាកសួរ

(ask a Question)

- -Pedro to Hob: "Go out and speak to the fisherman."
- -Art teacher to Olaf: "Don't come for any more lessons."
- -Mr Joe (To Tom) "Go back to your home."

My wife (To me) "don't go out."

My daughter to her mome: "Don't complaint my papa too much." My son (To me) "Don't drink beer, papa."

ចំណាំ: Direct Speech អំបូរនេះត្រូវបានគេហៅថា "Indirect Command" ប្រព្រឹត្តិដើម្បីបង្កាប់ បញ្ហារ (Express a command or a request).

2 Indirect Speech

និយមន័យ: Indirect Speech គឺជាវោហាស័ព្ទមួយបែបមានលក្ខណ: ប្រយោលពោលគឺរាល់សំដី ទាំងឡាយនោះត្រូវបានគេលើកឡើងឬស្រង់យកមកនិយាយជាថ្មីមានន័យថា សំដីនោះគឺម្ចាស់ សំលេងបាននិយាយរួចហើយតែត្រូវគេយកមកនិយាយម្តងឡេតដើម្បីប្រាប់ដល់អ្នកដ៏ទៃ។

EX:

He said that he wanted me to spend a year in Paris and a year in Germany so that I could get a really good knowledge of French and German. He said that he did love me.

Mr Hob said that he liked to tell a Joke.

She said that I would be able to run my business.

Padma said that he wanted to study medicine.

ចំណាំ: Indirect Speech ទាំងនេះគឺត្រូវបានគេហៅថា សំដីប្រយោលបែបថ្លែងការណ៍

(Make a statement).

Pedro asked how much longer Olaf was staying in England. The picture firm asked Mr Boost when he wanted them to stop. Hob asked if 20 might have another piece of cake.

ចំណាំ: Indirect Speech ទាំងនេះត្រូវបានគេហៅថា សំដីប្រយោលបែបសំនួរ (Indirech Ouestion)

EX:

The Rart teacher told Olaf not to come for any more lessons. Mr Joe told Tom to go back to his home. My wife told me not to go out.

ចំណាំ: Indirect Speech ទាំងនេះត្រូវបានគេហៅថា (Indirect Command)

🖴 : សូមសង្កេតមើលជាថ្មីរវ៉ាង: Direct and Indirect Speech.

Direct Speech

- -Mr Sek said: "I like teaching English."
- -He said: "I do love you."
- -She said: "my name is Gulia."
- -I know that, but I am wondering how I will get the paint off afterwards.

Indirect Speech

- -Mr Sek said that he like teaching English.
- -He said that he did love me."
- -She said that her name was Gulia the man said that he knew that, but he was wondering how he would get the paint off afterwards.

🖔 រប្បើបផ្លាស់ប្តូរកាល "tense" ពី "Direct" ទៅ "Indirect"

ស្លឹកឈើ

:Direct Speech

- -Simple present.
- -Present Continuous.
- -Present perfect continuous.
- -Simple Past.
- -Past continuous.
- -Simple future.
- -May.
- -Can.
- -Must.
- -Had better.
- -Ought(to).
- -used (to).
- -Would.
- -Should.
- Silouic

-Might. **ករណីលើកលែង: (Exception)**

- 1 Simple Present.
- 2 Present Perfect
- 3 Future Tense.
- 4 Present Continuous.

: Indirect Speech

- -Simple Past.
- -Past continuous.
- -Past perfect continuous.
- -Past Perfect.
- -Past perfect continuous.
- -Future conditional.
- -might.
- -Could.
- -Had to.
- -Had better.
- -Ought(to).
- -Used (to).
- -would.
- -Should.
- -Might.

🖔 កាលទាំងនេះ បើនិយាយក្នុងសំដីផ្ទាល់ (Direct Speech) ត្រូវតែរក្សាឱ្យបានគង់វង្សក្នុងប្រយោគ

ប្រយោល (Indirect Speech) មានន័យថាអាចប្តូរបានតែសព្វនាមទេឯរីកាលមិនប្តូរទេ។

EX:

He says: "I like English grammar." (Direct)

He says that he likes English grammar. (Indirect)

He has said: "I like English grammar. (Direct)

He has said that he likes English grammar. (Indirect)

He will say: "I like English grammar." (Direct)

He will say that he likes English grammar. (Indirect)

He is saying: "I like English grammar." (Direct)

He is saying that he likes English grammar. (Indirect)

👆 ម្យ៉ាងទៀតចំពោះព្រិត្តិការណ៍ជាទូទៅឬជាទម្លាប់យើងមិនផ្លាស់ប្តូរកាលទេ

EX:

My father said: "Honesty is the best policy. (Direct)

My father said that honesty is the best policy. (Indirect)

"I love my wife," my friend said. (Direct)

My friend said that he loves his wife. (Indirect)

"The earth moves round the sun," Papa said. (Direct)

Papa said that the earth moves round the sun. (Indirect)

👆 សំរាប់ព្រិត្តិការណ៍ជាប្រវត្តិសាស្ត្រដែលកន្លងទៅក៏យើងមិនផ្លាស់ប្តូរកាលដែរ ។

EX:

My father said, "India got freedom in 1947," (Direct)

My father said that India got freedom in 1947. (Indirect)

The first world war took place in 1914) my wife said. (Direct) My wife said that the first world war took place in 1914. (Indirect)

🖔 រប្យេបផ្លាស់ប្តូរពេលវេលានិងទឹកន្លែង

■Today/ tonight => That day/ That night.

-Yesterday => The previous day/ The day before.

-Tomorrow => The next day/ the following day the day after.

-Last night =>The night before/the previous night.

-Last week => The week before. -Last year => The year before.

-The day before yesterday => Two days before/ the day before the previous day.

-The day after tomorrow => The day after the next day.

-Tomorrow night => The next night/ The following night.
-Next week => The week after/ The following week.
-Next day => The day after/ The following day.
-Next year => The year after/ the following year.
-Next month => The month after/ the following month.

-Just => Then. => There. -Here -Thus => So. -Come $=>G_0$. -Now => Then. => Shortly. -Recently => That. -This -These => Those. -A go =>Before.

ឋ្នុសម្រសង្កេតជាថ្មីម្តងទៀតរវ៉ាង Direct and Indirect Speech.

Direct Speech

-Mr Sek said, "I like teaching English

-He said, "I do love you."

- she said, "my name is Julia.

-I know that, but I'm wondering how I will get the paint off after wards.

Indirect Speech

- -Mr Sek said that he liked teaching English.
- -He said that he did love me."
- -She said that her name was Julia."
- -The man said that he knew that, but he was wondering how he would get the paint off after wards.

Make a statement

Question

DIRECT

- -The picture firm to Mr Boost:
- "when do you want us to stop.
- -The old fisherman, "How much will the artist pay me?"
- -"Can you speak English?" my friend to me.
- -"Who are you?" she said to me.
- -" What do you want?" He said to me
- -Lucille (to Frieda): "Do you like my new dress?"
- -Hob said: "Can you swim, Andrew?"

Question **INDIRECT**

- -The picture firm asked Mr Boost when he wanted them to stop.
- -The old fisherman asked how much the artist would pay him.
- My friend asked me whether I could speak English.
- -she asked me who I was.
- -He asked me who I was.
- -Lucille asked Frieda if (whether) she liked her dress.
- -Hob asked Andrew if he could swim.

ចំណាំ: Question mark (?) និង Inverted comma or Quotation mark (" ") ត្រូវបានគេ លុប ចោលក្នុង indirect speech ម្យ៉ាងឡើត ត្រូវបានលុបបើគ្នាន Question Word ក្នុង Direct Speech ទេ

Direct Command

- -Art teacher to Olaf: "Go back to your home."
- -Art teacher to Olaf: "Don't come for any more lessons.
- -Officer to soldiers: "Fire"
- -My wife to her son: "stand up"

Indirect Command

- -The art teacher told Olaf to go back to his home.
- -The art teacher told Olaf not to come for any more lessons.
- -The officer commanded the soldiers to fire.
- -My wife ordered her son to stand up.

ចំណាំ: Indirect command ត្រូវដីកមុខដោយពាក្យ Told, Ordered, Command .

Direct Request

Indirect Request

- -Mother (to Andrew) "please don't eat all the cak"
- -Farmer (to visitor):" please don't leave gate open"
- -Frieda (to Jan):"pass me the sugar ,please"
- -Mother asked Andrew not to eat all the cake.
- -The farmer asked the visitor not to leave the gate open.
- -Frieda requested Jan to pass her the sugar.

ចំណាំ: Indirect Request ជាទូទៅត្រូវដឹកមុខដោយពាក Asked ,Requested ,etc..

(EXPRESS A COMMAND OR ARE REQUEST)

ចំណាំ: ចំពោះប្រយោគមួយចំនួនដែលពាក់ពន្ឋជាមួយ "Let" អាចត្រូវបានគេផ្លាស់ប្តូរ ទៅក្នុងសំដីប្រ

យោលមានប៊ីវិធីសាស្ត្រគឺ:

- 1 Suggest/ Propose + Gerund
- 2 Suggest/ Propose + Infinitive
- 3 Suggest/ Propose + That clause

EX:

"Let's go home", my wife said to me.

My wife suggested going home.

My wife proposed to go home.

My wife proposed that we should go home.

ចំណាំះ ចំពោះប្រយោគភ្ញាក់ផ្អើលក៏វិយាស័ព្ទរាយការណ៍ជាទូទៅតាមក្បួនវេយ្យាករណ៍គេប្រើ

Exclaim + With+ Happiness/ Joy/ Sorrow/ Fear/ Anger/ Wonder/ Surprise/ Pain/ Appland/ Regreat/ urse/ Cry out ឯវីពាក្យ How/ What ដែលស្ថិតនៅក្នុងប្រយោពត្រូបានគេលុបចោល 100%

EX:

1

- "What a beautiful girl Srey Pove is! I said. (Direct)

 I exclaimed with wonder that Srey Pove is really a very beautiful girl (Indirect)
- 2 "what a nice dog you have" my friend said to me (Direct) My friend exclaimed with surprise that I had a nice dog (Indirect) "Oh! what an excellent idea you have got "she said to me (Direct) She exclaimed with wonder that I had got an excellent idea. (Indirect) "How gracefully Srey Pove smiled and looked at me!" I said to my friend.(Direct) I exclaimed with happiness that Srey Pove had smiled and looked at me very gracefully.(Indirect)

ចំណាំ: ប្រយោគនេះត្រូវបានគេរាយការណ៍តាមបែបនេះ

- "Good night! see you again! I said to me friend (Direct).
- I wished my friend good night and told him to see him again (Indirect).
- -"wished you all the best," I said to Srey Pove (Direct).
- -I wished Srey Pove all the best (Indirect).
- -"May happy returns of the day," I said to Srey Pove (Direct).
- -I wished Srey Pove man happy returns of the day.(Indirect)

The End Of Direct and Indirect Speech.

<u>UNIT XXII</u>

VOICE

និយមន័យ: Voice គឺជាទំរង់នៃកិរិយាស័ព្ទដែលចង្អល់បង្ហាញថា តើមនុស្ស ឬវត្ថុសំដែងនូវសកម្ម ភាពឬ ក៏រឿងនៃសកម្មភាពនោះៗត្រូវបានគេធ្វើទៅកាន់មនុស្ស ឬ វត្ថុ

🖎 នៅក្នុងភាសាអង់គ្លេស Voice ចែកជាពីរគឺ:

- 1 Active Voice
- 2 Passive Voice
- 1 Active Voice គឺជាទំរង់នៃក៏វិយាស័ព្ទដែលបង្ហាញថាបទប្រធានសំដែងនូវទង្វើ ប្រព្រិត្តិ ទៅអាចដើម្បីគ្រប់គ្រងប្រយោគទាំងមូលបាន។
- 2 Passive Voice គឺជាទំរង់នៃក៏រិយាស័ព្ទដែលបង្ហាញថាកម្មបទជាអ្នកធ្វើទៅលើប្រធានមានន័យថា ក្នុងករណីនេះបទ ប្រធានតែងឈរនៅ ខាងចុងនៃប្រយោគវិញ

ស្លីកឈើ

1 Simple Past Tense

Form [S + V2 + Obj] (Active)

EX: Mr Sek wrote many songs last year.

I hated a stupid and black man.

He drank beer last night.

He kissed her.

Form: [S + Tobe(Was/Were + V3 + (By + Obj] (Passive)]

EX: Many songs were written by Mr Sek last year.

A stupid and black man was hated by me.

Beer was drunk by him. She was kissed by him.

2 Simple continuous tense

Form [S + Was/ Were+ Ving + Obj] (Active)

EX: I was learning English and French.

She was cooking food.

The policemen was catching the robber.

Form [S + Was/Were + Being + V3 (By + Obj)] (Passive)

EX: English and French were being learn by me.

Food was being cooked by her.

The robber was being caught by the policemen.

3 Past perfect tense

Form [S + Had + V3 + Obj] (Active)

EX: My teacher had loved her.

He had praised me.

They had destroyed our house.

Form [S + Had + Been + V3 + (By + Obj)] (Passive)

EX: She had been loved by my teacher.

I had been praised by him.

Our house had been destroyed by them.

4 Past Perfect Continuous Tense

Form [S + Had + Been + Ving + Obj](Active)

EX: I had been loving Miss So cheatha for 3 years...

He had been loving her.

She had been eating the food for 3 years.

Form [S + Had + Been + Being + V3 + By + Obj] (Passive)

EX: Miss So Cheatha had been being loved by me.

She had been being loved by him.

The food had been being eaten by her for 5 years.

5 Simple Present Tense

Form [S + V1 + Obj] (Active)

EX: I listen the rocking song.

He nocks the door again and again.

She plays the quita.

Form [S + Tobe = Am / Is / Are + V3 + (By + Obj)] passive)

EX: The Rocking song is listened by me.

The door is knocked by her again and again.

The quita ia played by her.

6 The Present Continuous Tense

Form [S + Tobe=Am/Is/Are + Ving + Obj] (Active)

EX: My son is teaching the computer.

My daughter is teaching English garmmar. My wife is teaching the history of Khmer.

Form [S + Tobe = Am/Is/Are + Being + V3 + (By + Obj)] (Passive)

EX: The computer is being taught by my son.

English grammar is being taught by my daughter. The history Khmer is being taught by my wife.

7 The Present Perfect Tense

Form: [S + Have/Had + V3 + Obj] (Acive)

EX: She has dept the money.

She has cooked the food.

She has taken care of the children.

Form [S + Have/Has + Been + V3 + By + Obj] Passive

EX: The money has been kept by her.

The food has been cooked by her.

The children have veen taken care of by her.

8 Present Perfect Continuous Tense

Form [S + Has/Have/ + Been + Ving + Obj] (active)

EX: I have been teaching english garammar.

I have been making money.

I have been missing my family.

Form [S + Has/ Have + Been + Being + V3 + By + Obj] (passive)

EX: English grammar has been being taught by me.

Money has been being made by me.

My family has been being missed by me.

9 Simple Future Tense

Form [S + Will/Shall + V1 + Obj] (Active)

EX: I will finish my writing tomorrow.

He will help me.

She will do the work.

Form [S + Will/Shall + Be + V3 + (By + Obj)] passive

EX: My writing be finished by me tomorrow.

I will be helped by him.

The work will be done by her.

10 Future Continuous Tense

Form [S + Will/Shall + Be + Ving + Obj] Active

EX: He will be running his horse.

She will be watching T.V.

I will be writing my poem.

Form [S + Will / Shall + Be + Being + V3 + (By + Obj] passive

EX: His horse will be run by him.

T.V will be watching by her.

My poem will be writing by me.

11 future perfect tense

Form [S + Will/Shall + Have + V3 + Obj] Active

EX: I will have driven a car.

I will have sold beer.

I will have helped the poor.

Form [S + Will/Shall + Have + Been + V3 + By + Obj] Passive

EX: A car will have been driven by me.

The poor will have been help by me.

Beer will have been sold by me.

12 Future perfect continuous tense

Form [S + Will/Shall + Have + Been + Ving + Obj] Active

EX: My nephew will have been speaking French.

My niece will have been teaching Japanese.

My daughter will have ben learning Spanish.

Form [S + Will/Shall + Have + Been + Being + V3 + Obj] Passive

EX: French will have been spoken by my nephew.

Japanese will have been taught by my niece

Spanish will have been learnt by my daughter.

ចំណាំ: ជាទូទៅបទប្រធានតែងតែឈរនៅខាងចុងប្រយោគ ហើយការឈរក្នុងទីតាំងនេះ គឺតែង ទទួលទង្វើរពីគេតែត្រង់ករណីនេះ មិនមែនដូចករណីដទៃឡើយ ពោលគឺប្រធាននៅតែ ជាប្រធានដដែល មានន័យថា ទោះឈរខាងចុងប្រយោគក៏ដោយ ក៏បទប្រធាននៅតែជា ម្ចាស់នៃសកម្មភាពជានិច្ច ចំពោះទំរង់កម្មបទដែលគេតែងតាំងជាប្រធានក្នុង Passive នោះប្រធានរូបនេះមានតែឈ្មោះទេតែសកម្មភាពពិតនោះគឺទទួលរងទង្វើពីកម្ម បទដែលបង្កប់ខ្លួនក្នុងនាមជាទង្វើយ៉ាងប្រាកដំ។

Special passive voice

ករណីទី១ Imperative passive voice គឺជាប្រភេទ Voice ម្យ៉ាងដែលមានលក្ខណ:បញ្ជា

form [Imperative finite verb + Obj] Active

EX: Arrest the robber.

Kill the black dog.

Do you work property.

[Let + Obj + Be + V3] Passive

EX: Let the robber be arrested.

Let the dog be killed.

Let the work be done.

ករណីទី២ Negative Imperative Passive Voice

form [Don't + Bare infinitive + Obj] Active

EX: Don't kill my love.

Don't steal his money.

Don't drink beer.

Form [Let + Obj + Not + Be + V3] Passive

EX: Let my love not be cut.

Let his money not be stolen.

Let beer not be drunk.

ករណីទី៣ ការប្រើប្រាស់ពាក្យ "By whom"

Form [Who + T.V + Obj]

EX: Who loves yoy? Who hate you? Who kiss you? Form [Tobe + S + V3 + By hom?] or [By whome + Tobe + S + V3?] EX: Are you loved by whome? Are you hated by whome? Are you kissed by whome? Or By whom are you loved? By whom are you hated? By whome are you kissed? ករណីទី៤ Infinitive passive form [S + Can/May/Must + Bare infinitive + Obj] EX: She can write English well. He may drive his car. We must kill the robber. Form [S + Can/Must/May + Be + V3 + By + Somebody]English can be written by her well. EX: His car may be driven by him. The robber must be killed by us. ករណីទី៥ ពពួកក៏វិយាស័ព្ទជំនួយប្រើជាមួយ infinitive form [S + Tobe/Ought/Used/Have/(Be) Gaing + To infinitive + Obj] EX: You are to help me. You used to love her. You have to save me. You are gong to play cards. Form [S + Tobe/ Used/ Ought/ Have/ (Be) Going) + Tobe + V3 + By + So] EX: I am to be helped by me. You ought to be worked hard. She used tobe loved by you. I have to be saved by you. Cards are going to be played by you. ករណីទី៦ ការប្រើប្រាស់ឃ្លា it is time Form [It is time + To infinitive + Obj] Active EX: it is time to eat breakfast. It is time to study English grammar. It is time to buy a new car. Form [It is time + For + Obj + Tobe + V3] EX: it is time for breakfast to be eaten. It is time for English grammar to be studied. It is time for a new car to be bought. ករណីទី៧ ការប្រើប្រាស់ The present participle complement. Form [S + TV + Obj + Ving + Obj] Active EX: I see you writing English well. She hears me speaking French.

Form [S + TV + Obj + Being + V3 + By + So] EX: I see English being written by you. She hears French being spoken by me.

The End Of Voices

UNIT XXIII PREFIX and SUFFIX

និយមន័យ: Prefix គឺជាបុព្វបទម្យ៉ាងជាទូទៅត្រូវបានគេប្រើដោយដាក់ពីមុខពាក្យផ្សេងៗប្រ ព្រិតិទៅដើម្បីប្តូរនូវអត្ថន័យដើមទាំអស្រុង។

*នៅក្នុងភាសាអង់គ្លេស Prefix ត្រូវបានគេចែកជាច្រើនប្រភេទគឺ:

ប្រភេទទី១ វាត្រូវបានគេប្រើដាក់ពីមុខពាក្យមួយចំនួន បញ្ជាក់ន័យបដិសេធមានន័យដូចជា= (Un,

Dis, In, Il, Ir, Non, Miss) EX: Lucky => unlucky. Happy => unhappy. (Un) Kind => unkind. Tidy => untidy. Like => dislike. Honest => dishonest. (Dis) Similar => dissimilar. => disadvantage. Advantage Legal => illegal. (II)Legible => illegible.

ចំណាំ (II) បុព្វបទនេះប្រើបានតែពាក្យណាដែលផ្ដើមដោយអក្សរ (L) ប៉ុណ្ណោះ ។

Regular => Irregular Responsible => Irresponsible. Rational => Irrational.

ចំណាំ: (IR) បុព្វបទនេះប្រើបានដរាបណាមានពាក្យផ្ដើមដោយអក្សរ (R) តែប៉ុណ្ណោះ ។

Call => Misscall.
Understand => Misunderstand.
Spell => Missspell.
Manage => Missmanage.

Miss

ចំណាំ: Miss ប្រើបានតែក៏រិយាស័ព្ទប៉ុណ្ណោះ មានន័យថា ខុស ឬ ច្រឡំ "។

Stop => Nonstop.
Goverment => Nongoverment.
Political => Nonpolitical.
Essential => Non essential.

ចំណាំ: ពាក្យ Non ប្រើបានតែនាម និង គុណនាមប៉ុណ្ណោះ ។

Force => Enforce.

```
Large
                             => Enlarge.
                                                 (EN)
          Dear
                             => Endear.
          Danger
                             => Endanger.
ចំណាំ:
          EN ប្រើបានតែនាមនិងគណនាមតែន័យថិនេះដើរតរជាកិរិយាស័ពវិ៣។
          Body
                             => Embody.
          Bitter
                             => Embitter.
                                                  EM
          Power
                             => Empower.
                             => Empurple.
          Purple
ចំណាំ:
          Em ប្រើបានទេនាមនិងគុណនាមប៉ុណ្ណេះ ម្យ៉ាងប្រើបានតែអក្សរ P B. ។
          author
                              => Coauthor.
          Operate
                             => Cooperate.
                                                  CO
          Worker
                             => Coworker
          Education
                             =. Coeducation.
ចំណាំ:
          co ប្រើបានតែនាមនិងក៏វិយាស័ព្ចប៉ុណ្ណោះ ម្យ៉ាង co នាមន័យថា "សហ" "together"
          president
                             => Ex-president.
          Wife
                             => Ex-wife.
ចំណាំ:
          EX ប្រើបានតែនាមប៉ុណ្ណោះ ន័យស៊ើ "former" ពីមុន ។
          Element
                              => Pre-element.
          History
                             => Pre-history.
          War
                             => Pre-war.
          Pre ប្រើបាននាម តែអាចគុណនាមដែរ
ចំណាំ:
          Date
                             => Post-date.
          War
                             => Post-war.
                                                    Post
          Graduate
                             => Post-graduate.
          Morterm
                             => Post-morterm.
ចំណាំ:
          Post ប្រើបាននាម និង គុណនាមន័យស្ថើ និងពាក្យ After ក្រោយ ។
          Write
                              => Re-write.
          Tell
                             => Re-tell.
                                             re
                              => Re-read.
          Read
          Re ប្រើបានតែកិរិយាស័ព្ទ ន័យស្មើពាក្យ "Again" ម្តងឡៅត
ចំណាំ:
          dirrector
                              => Sub-irrector.
          Committee
                             => Sub-ommittee.
                             => Sub-overnor.
          Governor
          Sub មានន័យច្រើនយ៉ាង តែជាទូទៅន័យស្មើពាក្យ "Under" "Below"
ចំណាំ:
          Man
                             => Super-man. >
          Film
                             => Super-film. \ Super
          Star
                             => Super-star.
ចំណាំ:
          Super ប្រើបានជាមយនាម អាចគុណនាមផងដែរ អត្ថន័យស្ដើ "Greate" អស្ចារ្យ
          Colored
                             => Multi- colored.
          Millional
                             => Multi-millionaire. > Milti
          National
                             => Multi-national.
          Multi ប្រើបាននាម និង គុណនាមន័យស៊ើនិង ពាក្យ "Many" ច្រើន។
ចំណាំ
```

```
Teachnic
                              => Poly-teachnic.
          Sybable
                              => Poly-sybable.
                                                  | poly
                              => Poly-glot.
          Glot
ចំណាំ
          Poly ប្រើដាក់ពីមខនាម និង គណនាម ន័យសើ "Serveral" ច្រើន
          Atlantic
                              => Trains-atlantic.
          continental
                              => Trains-continenal. \( \sum_{\text{Trains}} \)
                              => Trains-cript.
          Cript
ចំណាំ:
          Trains ប្រើបានជាមួនាម និងគុណនាម ន័យស្មើ "Through/ Cross" តាមរយ:, អ្នង់កាត់ ។
                              => Tri-syllable.
          Syllable
          Angle
                              => Tri-angle.
                              => Tri-cycle.
          Cycle
ចំណាំ:
          Tri ប្រើបានជាមួយនាម និងគុណនាម ន័យស៊ើ "Three" បឹ ។
          Cycle
                              => Bicycle.
                              => Bisexaul.
          Sexual
                              => Bimonthly.
          Monthly
ចំណាំ:
          Bi ប្រើបានជាមួយនាម និង គុណនាមន័យស្ទើ "Two"ពីរ ។
          National
                              => International.
          Phone
                              => Interphone.
          Continental
                              => Intertcontinental.
ចំណាំ:
          Inter ប្រើបានជាមួយនាម គុណនាម ន័យស្នើ "Between" អន្តរៈ ។
          Do
                              => Overdo.
          Work
                              => Overwork.
                                                Over
          Come
                              => Overcome.
          Over ប្រើបានជាមួយកិរិយាស័ព និង គុណនាម ន័យស៊ើ ("Too" "Much") ច្រើនពេក។
ចំណាំ:
                                 SUFFIX
               Suffix គឺជាបច្ច័យម្យ៉ាង ជាទូទៅត្រូវបានគេបន្ថែមនៅខាងចុងនៃពាក្យឯអត្តន័យ
 ព្រះនិមារាខិ
 ដើមប្រែប្រួល ជាន័យផ្សេងវិញ។
                                       EXAMPLE:
               <u>Verb</u>
                                                             Noun
                                      =>
               Agree
                                                             Agreement.
                                      =>
               Argue
                                                             Arguemen.
                                      =>
                                                                             Ment
               Government
                                                             Government.
                                      =>
               Achieve
                                                             Achievment.
                                      =>
          Ment នេះជា Suffix ដាក់ខាងចុងក៏រិយាស័ព្ទ អត្ថន័យប្រែប្រួលជានាមវិញប្រែថា "ការ" ឬ
ចំណាំ:
"សេចក្តី" ។
               Verb
                                                             Noun
               Transport
                                                             Transportation.
               Observe
                                                             Observation.
                                                                                 Ation
               Dictate
                                                             Dictation.
               Adapt
                                                             Adaptation.
```

Ation ពាក្យនេះចុះខាងចុងកិរិយាស័ព្ទភ្លាម អត្តន័យដើមក៏ក្លាយជានាម ១០០% តែម្តង ប្រែថា " ចំណាំ: ការ៉ាំ សេចក្តី ។ Verb Noun Complete Completition. **Expose** Expostition. ≻ Ition Repeat Repeatition. ចំណាំ: Ition នេះកាដែលចុះខាងចុងនៃក៏រិយាស័ព្ទ អត្ថន័យថ្មីនេះក៏ប្រែប្រួល គឺដើរតួរជានាម ប្រែថា "ការ" ឬ "សេចក្តី" ។ Verb Noun Classify Classifycation. Beautify Brautufycation. > Ification **Amplify** Amplification. ចំណាំ: Ification កាលដែលចុះខាងនៃក៏រិយាស័ព ការងារនិង អត្ថន័យក៏ប្រែប្រួលជានាមទាំងស្រុង។ Noun <u>Verb</u> Decide Decision. Divide Dividsion. Invade Invasion. Sion Revise Revision Include Includsion. Conclude Concludsion. ចំណាំ: Sion កាលដែលចុះខាងចុងនៃកិរិយាស័ព្ទ ការងានិង អត្ថន័យ ក៏ផ្លាសប្តូរជានាមទាំងស្រុងវិញ។ Verb Noun Denial. Deny Arrive Arrival. Survive Survival. Al Refuse Refusal. Withdraw Withdrawal. Al កាលដែលចុះខាងចុងនៃក៏រិយាស័ព្ទហើយការងារ ទាំងសេចក្តីរបស់វា ក៏ប្រែជានាមវិញ ចំណាំ: តែពួកគេប្រើបានតែកិរិយាស័ព្ទដែលមានអក្សរ "E, W, Y. ខាងចុងនៃពាក្យប៉ុណ្ណោះ ។ Verb Noun Resist Resistance. Assist Assistance. Differ Difference. Ence/Ance Prefer Preference. Appear Appearence. Ance បច្ច័យនេះ កាលដែលចុះខាងចុងនៃកិរិយាស័ព្ទហើយ ការងារក្ដី អត្ថន័យក្ដី ក៏ប្រែប្រួលនៅ ចំណាំ: ពេលនោះភ្លាម ប្រែថា "ការ ឬ សេចក្តី"។ **Verb** Noun Friend Friendship. Partner Partnership. Ship Owner Ownership. ស្លីកឈើ Page 174

	Member	Membership.		
ចំណាំ: Ship កាលនាចុះខាងចុងនៃនាមសាធារណៈ ហើយ ពេលនោះក៏ក្លាយជានាមអរូបី				
	Verb Train Devote Trust Absent	Noun Trainee. Devotee. Trustee. Absentee.		
ចំណាំ: Ee កាព	រណាចុះខាងចុងនៃកិរិយាស័ព្ទ រឺ នាម រឺ គុណនាម ប្រព្រិ	ត្តទៅដើម្បីឱ្យក្លាយជា នាម		
9(00% មានន័យថា "អ្នកធ្វើ"។			
	Africa America Cambidia Asia	African American. Cambodian. Asian. (An, n)		
ចំណាំ: An,	N ត្រូវបានគេចុះខាងចុងនៃនាម និងឈ្មោះទាំងឡាយ(អសារណ:នាម) ដើម្បីចង្អល់បង្ហាញ		
នូវប្រទេស ឬភារ	ហមួយចំនួន ។			
, ,	Assist Serve	Assistant. Servant. Ant		
ចំណាំ: Antកាលដែលចុះខាងចុងនៃកិរិយាស័ព្ទឱ្យកា្លយជានាម ។				
	Study Correspond	Student. Correspondend. Ent		
ចំណាំ: ent	កាលណាដែលចុះខាងចុងនៃកិរិយាស័ព្ទឱ្យកា្លយជានាម ។			
	Work Run Speak Act Visit Govern	Worker Runner Speaker Actor Visitor Governor		
ចំណាំ: Er, Or កាលដែលចុះខាងចុងនៃកិរិយាស័ព្ទអត្ថន័យក្តីការងារក្តីឱ្យកា្លយជានាមវិញ។				
	China Japan Burma	Chinese Japanese Burmese Ese		
ចំណាំ Ese កាលណាចុះខាងចុងនៃនាមអសាធារណពោលគឺជាឈ្មោះនៃប្រទេសពេលវាក៏កា្លយជានាមគឹថាវា				
ជាជនជាតិឯង				
	Social Buddha Criticize	Socialism Buddhism Criticism		
ចំណាំះ បច្ច័យ Ism អាចចុះខាងចុងកិរិយាស័ព្ទខ្លះនាមខ្លះនិងគុណនាមខ្លះ ។				
	Piano Art Buddha Motor	Pianist Artist Buddhist Mortorist Ist		

Page 175

ស្លីកឈើ

ចំណាំ: បក្ខុំ	Difficult Certain Pare Popular	nsក៏កា្លយទៅជាអ្នកធ្វើទង្វើក្នុងនាមនោះឯង។ Difficulty Certaintly Parity Popularity				
້າາ ຳຕໍ່ດຳ	Electric Electricity J ចំណាំ: បច្ច័យ Ty, Ity ជាទូទៅត្រូវបានគេចុះខាងចុងគុណនាមពេលនោះវ៉ាក៏កា្លយជានាម។					
Happy Happiness ក						
	Kind Sad	Kindness Sadness Ness				
ចំណាំ: បច្ច័យ Ness ពេលដែលចុះខាងចុងគុណនាម បានតែគុណនាមទេពេលនោះវាក៏កា្លយជានាម។						
	Brave Slave Rober Discover	Bravery Slavery Robery Discovery				
ចំណាំ បច្ច័យ Ery,Y អាចចុះខាងចុងគុណនាមផង កិរិយាស័ព្ទផងពេលនោះវាក៏កា្លួយជានាម១០០% ។						
	Speak Cook Book Write	Speaking. Cooking. Booking. Writing.				
ចំណាំ:	Ing ចប្ត័យចុះបានតែក៏វិយាស័ព្ទប៉ុណ្ណោះ ពេ	លេនោះវាក៏ក្លាយទៅជា Verbal Noun ។				
	Free King	Freedom. Dom				
ចំណាំ:	Dom បច្ច័យអាចចុះបានគុណនាមខ្លះ និង ន	ភាមផងដែរ ។				
	Child Monk Boy	Childhood. Monkhood. Boyhood.				
ចំណាំ:	ចំណាំ: Hoodបច្ច័យចុះខាងចុងបានតែនាម ។					
	Depart Please Close	Departure. Pleasure. Closure. Ure				
ចំណាំ:	Ure បច្ច័យចុះបានតែកិរិយាស័ព្ទទេតែពេលនោះវាក៏ក្លាយជានាមវិញ។					
	Origin Motive Facility	Originante. Motivate. Facilita Ate				
ចំណាំ:	ហំ: Ate បច្ច័យចុះខាងចុងបានតែនាមទេ ពេលនោះវាក៏ក្លាយជាកិរិយាស័ព្ទវិញ ។					
	Soft Bright Wide	Soften. Brighten. Widen.				
ចំណាំ:	En បច្ច័យចុះខាងចុងគុណនាម ពេលនោះវាក៏ក្លាយជាកិរិយាស័ព្ទ។					

📣 ម្យ៉ាងទៀត En បច្ច័យនេះ ត្រូវបានគេចុះខាងចុងនាមអរូបិយ៍ ពេលនោះវាក៏ក្លាយជាកិរិយាស័ព្ទដូចជា:

	Long High	length height	lenghten. heighten.	
	Beauty Class Person		beautify. classify. personify.	
ចំណាំ:	Ify បច្ច័យចុះបានរ	ify បច្ច័យចុះបានដោយដាក់ខាងចុងនាម ពេលនោះវ៉ាក៏ក្លាយជាកិរិយាស័ព្ទ ជាទូទៅប្រែថា		
	ីធ្វើឱ្យ ។ Economy Harmony Colony		Economize. Harmonize. Colonize.	
ចំណាំ:	Ize បច្ច័យចុះបានតែនាមទេ ពេលនោះវាក៏ក្លាយជាកិរិយាស័ព្ទ ១០០% ។			
	Fashion Respon Eat Read Sense		Fashionable. Responable. Eatable. Readable. Sensible.	
ចំណាំ:	Able, Ible បច្ច័យប្	ុះ ខាងចុងកិរិយា	ស័ព្ទខ្លះ នាមខ្លះ ពេលនោះវ៉ាក៏ក្លាយជាគុណនាម ។	
	Reside Ignore Differ		Resident. Ignorant. Ant, Ent Different.	
ចំណាំ:	Ant, Ent ជាទូទៅ	Ant, Ent ជាទូទៅត្រូវបានគេចុះខាងចុងកិរិយាស័ព្ទ ពេលនោះវាក៏ក្លាយជាគុណនាម។		
	Danger Poison		Dangerous. Poisonous. Ous	
ចំណាំ:	Ous បច្ច័យនេះចុះប	Ous បច្ច័យនេះចុះបានតែនាមទេ ពេលនោះវាក៏ក្លាយជាគុណនាម។		
	Illustrate Quatity Talk		Illustrative. Quantitative Ative Talkative.	
ចំណាំ:	Ative បច្ច័យចុះបាទ	Ative បច្ច័យចុះបាននូវនាមខ្លះកិរិយាស័ព្ទខ្លះ តែពេលនោះវាក៏ក្លាយជាគុណនាម។		
	Fry Boil Debase Talent		Fried. Boiled Debased. Talented.	
ចំណាំ:	Ed បច្ច័យចុះបានកិរិ	Ed បច្ច័យចុះបានកិរិយាស័ព្ទខ្លះ នាមខ្លះ ចុះពេលណា វ៉ាក៏ក្លាយជាគុនាមពេលនោះ ។		
	Wood Gold Silk		wooden. golden. silken.	
ចំណាំ:	បច្ច័យ En, N កាល	បច្ច័យ En, N កាលណាចុះខាងចុងនាម ក៏ក្លាយជាគុណនាមវិញ ។		
	Care Hope Use		careful. hopeful. Ful useful.	

ចំណាំ: Ful បច្ច័យនេះចុះខាងចុងនាមពេលនោះ ក្លាយជាគុណនាម ។ Interes interesting. Bore -Ing boring. amusing. Amuse Ing បច្ច័យ កាលណាចុះខាងចុងកិរិយាស័ព្ទ ពេលនោះវាក៏ក្លាយជាគុណនាម ។ ចំណាំ: Care careless. Fear fearless. Job jobless. Less Home homeless. Parent parentless. ចំណាំ: less កាលណាលចុះខាងចុងនាម ពេលនោះវាក៏ក្លាយជាគុណនាមវិញ ។ Ball ball-like. ► Like Boy boy-like. Man ل man-like. ا ចំណាំ: Like ជាទូទៅត្រូវបានគេចុះខាងចុងនាម ឱ្យក្លាយជាគុណនាម ។ Friend friendly. Man manly. Ly Year yearly. Month monthly. -ចំណាំ: បច្ច័យ Ly កាលណាចុះខាងចុងនាម ពេលនោះក៏ក្លាយជាគុណនាមជាស្រេច ។ Sun sunny. Fun funny. Salt salty. (Y) កាលណាចុះខាងចុងនាមពេលនោះក៏ក្លាយជា គុណនាម១០០% ។ ចំណាំ:

The End Of Prefix and Suffix